THE

ANGLER'S *VADE MECUM:*

Or, a Compendious, yet full,

DISCOURSE OF ANGLING:

DISCOVERING

The apteſt Methods and Ways, exacteſt Rules, propereſt Baits, and choiceſt Experiments for the catching all manner of freſh Water Fiſh. Together with a brief Diſcourſe of Fiſh-ponds, and not only the eaſieſt, but moſt Palatable Ways of dreſſing of all ſorts of Fiſh, Whether belonging to Rivers, or Ponds; and the Laws concerning Angling, and the Preſervation of ſuch Fiſh.

The **Second Edition,**
Illuſtrated with *Sculptures*: And very much Enlarged.

LONDON, Printed for *T. Baſſet*, at the *George* near St. *Dunſtan's* Church in *Fleet-ſtreet*; and *W. Brown*, at the *Fiſh* at *Black Horſe Alley* end in *Fleet-ſtreet*. 1689.

F.213.2
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
DANIEL B. FEARING
30 JUNE 1919

THE PREFACE.

Courteous or Uncourteous Reader,

WHichſoever thou Art I value not, knowing that kind Words in a Preface are never Charms a proof to anticipate Cenſure; a Fate all Writers (eſpecially on ſo inconſiderable a Subject) cannot but expect; yet, if a Brother of the Angle reads and trys, better Fortune may be hoped for: As to others, the Book is not only generally uſeleſs, but they indiſcreet that Judg and paſs Sentence on what they underſtand not; Tractent Fabrilia Fabri. The common Objection, I know, will be raiſed by the Ignorant; that is, What needs any more Writing in this kind, ſince Markham, Walton, Venables, Cotton, and others, have with ſo much Ingenuity beſtowed no ſmall Pains herein? (to whoſe Labours and Induſtry I acknowledg this Tract not a little beholding.) Now the old and trite Anſwer to this Objection muſt needs be return'd, That a Pigmy mounted on the Shoulders of a Giant may ſee further than its Supporter; alſo all arts are capable of Improvement, none yet being arriv'd to an abſolute Perfection; and ſome affirm, that Angling, like Mathematicks, can never

never be ſo fully Learned, but that there will be ſtill more new Experiments left, for the Tryal of others that ſucceed: Beſides, thoſe Authors have diſcourſed ſomething generally and ſlightly on Angling, whereas this (eſpecially in this Second Edition) deſcends to the meaneſt particular any ways relating thereunto. I purpoſely forbear to ſpeak any thing, as is uſual, in praiſe of Angling, *or of its Antiquity, or any ways Celebrate it, by telling you what holy, wiſe, and illuſtrious Perſons have not only been Practiſers thereof, in all Ages, but alſo ſpoken largely in its Commendation; neither ſhall I enumerate the manifold Advantages it has of other Recreations, eſpecially by its eaſy Attainment, by the ſmallneſs of its Expence, Salubrity, and its creating a Calm and Sedate temper of Mind; that being an unworthy way of raiſing its Reputation by reflecting with detraction on other Sports: Neither could I ever obſerve that Harangues of that nature ever cauſed any Perſon to be enamour'd thereon, unleſs there be a Natural propenſity in his own Genius thereunto;* Anglers, *like* Poets, *being born with an innate Affection to* Angling, *as* Poets *with a peculiar Inclination to* Poetry; *only this let me note, That none ever by their overfondneſs of this Art conſum'd Lordſhips or Lands, left and intended by provident Anceſtors for a ſupport to their Poſterity; nor deplored any Misfortune (if he kept him on dry Land) he receiv'd by purſuit of this Recreation, it no ways being accompanied with thoſe Inconveniencies which frequently attend others; nor is there herein the leaſt Natural tendency to Vice.*

As

As for this little Treatiſe, many Perſons have contributed much Oyl to its Lamp, elſe it would never have been able to afford ſo great a Light; and (without Vanity, I hope, I may ſay) there are very many things herein never yet Publiſhed, and not Vulgarly known; as alſo all that has been materially Printed concerning Angling, *and that in ſo conciſe, regular, and brief Manner deliver'd, as will not only render this the uſefulleſt Book, but the moſt perfect of that Kind: You'll find herein no vain or ſuperfluous Digreſſions, far-fetch'd, and incongruous Similitudes, more apt to inflame the Price than inform the Reader. Be pleaſed to remember, That many of the Rules herein are General, and admit of ſome Exceptions, yet the* Angler *may make from thence beneficial Deductions; which, if well and prudently conſider'd, will diſcharge any Indictment of Falſity, the Fiſher-man otherwiſe might be incited to proſecute againſt me: Beſides, ſome things are propoſed for him to Experiment, and not as infallible Truths. Likewiſe the Countries, Soils, Rivers, Seaſons, Winds, and Qualities of the Year, are not alike, but differ almoſt in every Place, (and the Spring is five or ſix Weeks forwarder in ſome than in other Places) to whoſe great Variety the Defect or Imperfection that appears in any Rule ought to be aſcribed, and certain grains of Allowance made according to Circumſtances that intervene, eſpecially in* Artificial-Fly-Angling; *yet if the Reader peruſe this Book deliberately, and be but endued with Conſideration, and ſome Judgment to be gained only by practiſe, the genuine Parent of Perfection; he'll not deny but that all things herein*

herein are ſincerely Written, and, ſo as on his own frequent Eſſays he'll find True; and that the price of this Book is not totally caſt away, ſince it will in the higheſt degree conduce to the perfect Knowledge of the exacteſt ways of the practical part of this Art, for which it's only deſign'd, and not to fill, or perplex the Angler's *Head with Speculative, Fanciful, Idle, or Fabulous Notions of* Fiſh, *or* Angling. *And, though the Reader be no Angler, yet perhaps he may be Owner of Fiſh-ponds, or have a deſire to have Fiſh well dreſt at his Table; and herein he'll be well furniſhed for both, with ample and true Inſtructions, not to be met with elſe where; moſt of the latter having received the Approbations of the beſt Palats, and practice of the Nobleſt Tables: And as a ſecurity to the former, the underſtanding the Laws made for the preſervation of Fiſh, will not be unavailable. And, becauſe the* Pike *is a mighty Tyrant in the liquid Element, I have added a Supplemental and particular Epitome of him, wherein is declared, not only the manner of his Life, Nature, and Vices, but a probable Method deſcribed for his Deſtruction, thereby to gain Liberty to the other watery Inhabitants, whom he accounts only Created for the ſatisfaction of his voracious Humor; and, though the* Pearch *ſtands upon Property, and will not tamely ſubmit, and part with his Life for the ſake of Prerogative; yet if the* Pike *catch him by the Poll, he makes him pay dearly for his reſiſtance.*

The Style is plain, and fitted to the capacity of the meaneſt Fiſherman, which I eſteemed would beſt

beſt become a Work of this Nature, which will not bear a Florid dreſs, or Rhetorical Phraſes, Ornari res ipſa negat, contenta doceri, *neither indeed, if I would, could I other ways have done, becauſe I cannot pretend to be the Maſter of any Eloquence. The kind acceptance of the Firſt, produces this Second Edition, wherein every Chapter, nay almoſt every Section is conſiderably augmented, beſides the Addition of Two new Chapters; and you'll find on comparing them, many excellent things, and more refined knacks added through the whole, gained by Converſe, with the moſt curious Obſervors, and Practiſers of this Art; which knacks may be ſerviceable to ſome, though diſapproved by others; moſt Fiſhermen having ſome private Sentiments of their own, which conceitedly they prefer before others, on purpoſe to put a greater Value on themſelves, than any real Merit, or Skill can be found in them: From ſuch Bully Fiſhers, this Book expects no other Reception than Scorn and Contempt, their conſtant Companions. And ſome ill Natured Anglers are offended for opening their Cabinet, by divulging their Secrets, like Flowers gathered and placed in one Garland, and proſtituted to the View of every Common Eye; how ridiculous their Opinions are every one is able to Judge, ſince it is not Fine, Curious, and Skilful Angling, that deſtroys the breed of Fiſh, or is thereunto injurious; but* Otters, Water-rats, Water-mice, Herons, Bitterns, Sea-gulls, King's-fiſhers, Cormorants, *and the Unlawful practice, and frequent uſe of Damming, Groping, Spearing, Hanging, Twitchelling, Firing by Night,*

and

and Nets that depopulate the watery Element, more in one Month than all the Years Angling. Now, but that it's uſual to follow the beaten Path, and that the Printer perhaps would be put out of Humour, there had been no need of a Commendatory Preface, *to Court any into a good Opinion of it: Poſſibly it's own Worth will abundantly juſtify it, which on ſerious Peruſal, and careful Experiments, it's hoped the Buyer will be both ready, and willing to Teſtify for the Vindication, as well as Satisfaction of the Author, who now Annexes his Name, not out of the common Itch, or Oſtentation, to be ſeen in Print, but to evidence that he's not aſhamed to own the Work; which, although an Anonymous at Firſt, yet from Anglers found a generous Entertainment, far beyond the Expectation of*

Smedley *near* Manchester, *in* Lancaſhire, *Nov.* 26. 1688.

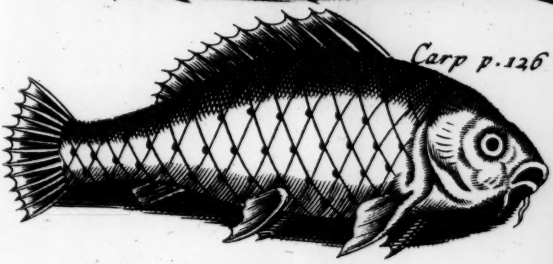
Ja. Chetham.

THE

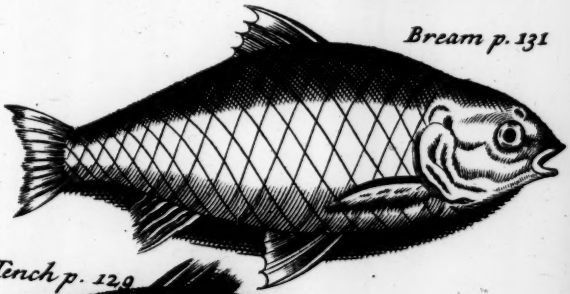
Pike pag: 58

Place this pag: 1st

Carp p. 126

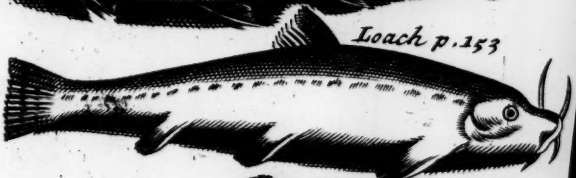


Bream p. 131

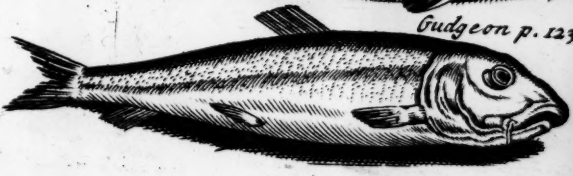


Tench p. 129

Loach p. 153



Gudgeon p. 123



THE ANGLER'S *VADE MECUM*, &c.

CHAP. I.

Of the Angle Rod, and its Materials.

When, and what Materials to provide for Angle Rods, &c.

§1. GATHER the Materials to make Angle Rods of, as the Haſle, ſmall Crab-tree, Black-thorn, and Yew Switches, *&c.* at the 10th. of *December*, or betwixt the laſt day of *November* and *Chriſtmas* day, that being the only time, becauſe then they are freeſt from Sap,

and are then the toughest: Get the Stocks, and Tops especially taper, or rush grown, streight, smooth, and free from Knots; the pieces of each Rod to suit each other in an exact Symmetry, otherwise they'll neither cast, nor strike well, nor ply truly. If they be not free from Knots they'll be very apt to break at a Knot, and often frustrate the expectation: Bind them in Bundles, in the middle whereof put some straight Pole, to keep them from warping or crookning, and let them rest 15 months, at least, before used.

Best Rod for Ground Line in muddy Waters, and for Float Angling.

§ 2. For the Ground Angle, especially in muddy Waters, the Cane or Reed Rod is best, which should be 3 yards and half of Cane, and a top of Hasle therein to put, consisting of one, two, or three pieces, and all of them together to be 2 yards, or 1 yard and half long, with the Whale-bone, at least; and at the top have 5 or 6 inches of Whale-bone, made round and taper, and whip'd with Shoomaker's Wax, and Silk, neatly thereunto; so that your Rod will in all be 5 yards and half, or 5 yards long at least.

The stiffness of the Cane is helped by the length and strength of the top, the proportionable bending whereof chiefly preserves the Line. Having got an Hasle top, made of your

your deſired length, cut off 5 or 6 inches of the ſmall end; then piece neatly, to the remaining part, a ſmall piece of round, ſmooth, and taper Whale-bone, of 5 or 6 inches long, and whip it to the Haſle with good Silk, well rubbed with the beſt Shoomaker's Wax; all which will make the Rod to be long, taper, gentle, and not ſo apt to break: Let not the Whale-bone be above 6 inches long, at the moſt; and, at top thereof, whip a narrow, but ſtrong, nooſe of Hair, with waxed Silk, to put your Line to.

§ 3. If your Hook faſten on Wood or Stones, in the Water, take out the top; and, inſtead thereof, put a Stick of Haſle, which hath two Grains, or is forked; and follow the Line therewith, until you come to the Hook, (the Line running between the Grains or Forks) and it will looſen the Hook; then take out the Stick, and put in the top again.

The beſt Rod for Fly, and running Line, in clear Waters.

§ 4. A Rod for Fly Angling, or running Line, in a clear Water, for Trout, Grayling, or Salmon Smelts (which are young Salmons about the bigneſs of a Freſh Herring) ſhould be of ſeveral pieces of Haſles (as 5 or 6) and 6 inches of Whale-bone, all ſmooth, round, and taper: And the Haſles are to be taper, and proportionably fitted to each other; and

ſo neatly piec'd together, with fine Wax thread below, and Silk above, as to make it taper, and ruſh grown, like a Switch, and ply with a true bent to the Hand.

But the neateſt Rod is thus made: Get a white Deal, or Fir-board, that's thick and free from Knots and Frets, and 7 or 8 foot long; let the Arrow-maker divide this with a Saw into ſeveral breadths; then, with his Planes, let him ſhoot them round, ſmooth, and ruſh grown, or taper-wiſe, and one of theſe will be 7 or 8 foot of the bottom of the Rod, all in one piece; then piece to it an Haſle of 6 or 7 foot long, proportion'd to the Fir, yet ruſh grown (the Haſle may conſiſt of 2 or 3 pieces;) then to the Haſle piece a piece of Yew, about 2 foot long, made round, taper, and ſmooth, by the Arrow-maker; and to the Yew a piece of ſmall, round and ſmooth Whale-bone 5 or 6 inches long; and this will be a curious Rod, if artificially work'd: Be ſure that the Deal for bottom be ſtrong and round. The Rod for Fly, and running Worm, in a clear Water, muſt by no means be top heavy; but very well mounted, and exactly proportionable as well as ſlender and gentle at top; otherwiſe it will neither caſt well, ſtrike readily, nor ply and bend equally, which will very much indanger the Line; and let both the Haſle and Yew tops be free and clear from Knots, otherwiſe they'll be often in danger to break. For the ſame reaſon, let all the Haſle Rods

Rods be free from Knots, and no weightier than you can eaſily manage with one hand.

Now the whiteneſs of the Deal, or Fir, will ſcare away Fiſh; but you muſt colour the Fir in this following manner, *viz.* warm the Fir bottom at the Fire, when finiſhed by the Arrow-maker; then, with a Feather dipt in *Aqua Fortis*, ſtroke the Deal, or Fir bottom, and, with your Hand, chafe it into the Fir, and it will make it a pure Cinamon colour.

Roch, &c. *Rod.*

§ 5. Rods for Roch, Dace, Tench, Chub, Bream, and Carp, *&c.* ſhould not have the top ſo gentle as one for Fly; therefore make their tops prett, ſtiff, that ſo the Rod may exactly anſwer the motion of the Hand: For Roch and Dace only nibble, and if you ſtrike not in that very moment, eſpecially if you fiſh with Paſte, or any very tender Bait, you miſs them; becauſe a ſlender top folds and bends a little with a ſudden Jerk.

§ 6. In Droughts, ſteep your Rod in Water, a little before you begin to Angle.

§ 7. At top of your Rod or Fin fix, with Shoomaker's Wax and Silk, a nooſe or loop of Hair, not large but ſtrong, and very ſtraight, to fix your Line to.

The Rods length.

§ 8. Generally length of Rod is to be governed by the breadth of the River you Angle in; but always uſe a Rod full as long as the River will bear, and let the ſame be very well mounted, and not in the leaſt top-heavy: Although I angle in a ſmall River generally, yet I conſtantly uſe a Rod 5 yards and a half long; and experimentally find more advantages by it than I need to trouble you with here, by recounting them.

Running Line top.

§ 9. Your top for running Line muſt be gentle, that the Fiſh may more eaſily, and (to himſelf) inſenſibly run away with the Bait, and not be ſcared with the ſtiffneſs of the Rod: If you make your top of Yew and Whalebone, as before is directed, it will much conduce to this purpoſe; the Yew, though much bended, will quickly return to its former ſtanding.

To preſerve Rods.

§ 10. To preſerve Haſles, whether ſtocks or tops, from Worm-eating or rotting, twice or thrice in a year, as you think fit, rub them all over with Sallet Oyl, Tallow, or ſweet Butter, which was never ſalted; and, with much

much rubbing, chafe the ſame into them; and keep your Rod dry, leſt it rot; and not too near the Fire, leſt it grow brittle; and in the Spring, before you begin to Angle, ſteep them 12 hours in Water.

CHAP. II.

Of Hairs and Lines.

What Hair to elect for Lines.

§ 1. ELect your Hair not from lean, poor, or diſeaſed Jades, but from a Stone-horſe, or Gelding at leaſt, that is fat, ſtrong, and luſty, and of 4 or 5 years old, and that which groweth from the inmoſt and middle part of his Dock, and ſo extendeth it ſelf downwards to the Ground, is commonly the biggeſt and ſtrongeſt Hair about the Horſe, and better than thoſe upon the upper part of, or ſetting on of the Tail: Generally beſt Horſes have the beſt Hair.

Colour of Hair for Lines.

§ 2. Hair of a Sorrel, Cheſnut, or Brown colour is beſt for ground Angle, eſpecially in muddy Waters, they being not only the colour of the Gravel or Sand, but of the Water

alſo; the White, and Gray, or duskiſh White Hair, for clear Rivers and Waters. Your Hair thus ſuited is not diſcernable by the Fiſh, and conſequently will not ſcare them from your Bait, if your Lines be but of a juſt and due thickneſs.

Some uſe the pale watery Green, but not a deep Green, for weedy Rivers in Summer. A Black may do well for Rivers that immediately flow from Moſſes, and are thereby very Black: But, in my own Practice, I always contemn'd both the Green and Black-colour'd Lines.

§ 3. Some (although I never do) dye their Hair of what colour they pleaſe; which, for a Brown, is thus done, *viz.* Boil Walnut Leaves in Chamber-lye, or, inſtead thereof, Water and ſome Allum in it, and, when cold, ſteep the Hair therein; and ſome add a few Marigold Leaves to the Walnut Leaves and Chamber-lye, which is needleſs.

Some ſay, that the inner Bark of a Crab-tree, boil'd in Water with ſome Allum, makes a pure Yellow colour; which is only (if at any time) good when Weeds rot, and thereby the Line looks like to the Weeds.

§ 4. If you'll have a Pale Water Green, take a Pint of ſtrong Ale, half a Pound of Soot, a little quantity of Juice of Walnut Leaves, an equal quantity of Allum; put all together in a Pot, Pan, or Pipkin, boil them half an hour; being cold, put the Hair into it, and it will make

make the Hair of a Glaſs, or pale Green colour, the longer it lyes the deeper is the colour: But if you'll have it rather a deeper Green; Take a Pottle of Allum Water, a large handful of Marigold Leaves, boil them till a yellow Scum ariſe; then take half a Pound of green Copperas, as much Verdigriſe, beat them into fine Powder, put thoſe into the Allum Water, ſet all to cool; then put in the Hair, and let it remain till it's deep enough coloured, about 12 hours; then take it out, and lay it to dry. Note, that the longer you permit Hair to be in it, it will be deeper coloured: Some put in the Hair whileſt the Liquor is hot, but, I doubt, that weakens the Hair; and indeed ſo, I think, does any dying, or colouring of Hair.

How to order, chuſe, and keep Hair.

§ 5. When you get any good Hair, immediately ſteep it 12 hours in cold Spring Water; then waſh and rinſe it very well from Dirt, without ſtraining any Hairs; then hang it up to dry 3 or 4 days in a Kitchen, but not too near the Fire; when perfectly dry, put it in a Bag or Caſe made of Parchment, or Paper; which lay in a Box, or Desk, plac'd in an upper Room.

How to make Lines.

§ 6. When you make Lines, eſpecially 4 or 5 of the lowermoſt links, lengths, gildards, or toughts, (for they are ſtil'd by all theſe Names in different Places and Countries) let them be of the beſt Hairs, and chuſe out of the Hair ſuch as are of equal bigneſs, even, round, clear, and free from galls, ſcabs and frets; for ſuch a Hair will prove as ſtrong as three uneven, ſcabby Hairs, that are ill choſen, and full of galls, or unevenneſs; for ſuch commonly ſtretch altogether, or break altogether, which Hairs of an unequal bigneſs never do, but break ſingly, and betray the Angler that relies on them: Therefore when you get good Hair be choice and ſparing of it; and you may make the top of your Line, and indeed all the Line, except 2 yards next the Hook, of a courſer Hair. Always let the top of your Line, whether in muddy or clear Waters, be made of white Hair; becauſe the Fiſhes Bites, and Line, will be far more diſcernible than if it were either of black or brown Hair.

§ 7. Never ſtretch or ſtrain Hairs before they be made into a Line (as ſome do) for then they will ſhrink, when uſed; the ſtrongeſt and beſt are eaſily elected by the Eye.

§ 8. To make the Line handſom, and to twiſt the Hair even and neat, gives it ſtrength; for if one Hair be long, and another ſhort, the

ſhort

ſhort one receives no ſtrength from the long one, and ſo breaketh; and then the other, as too weak, breaketh alſo: Therefore twiſt them ſlowly, and, in twiſting, keep them from entangling together, which hinders their right pleighting or bedding together; and twiſt the Hairs neither too hard nor too ſlack, but even, ſo as they may twine, and couch cloſe one within another, and no more; without either ſnarling or gaping one from another. Your Links may be tyed to each other with a Fiſher's knot, or, as ſome call it, a Water-knot, which any Angler will teach you to make. The mixing Hair and Silk I eſteem no ways good for Lines; but if your Lines muſt be very ſtrong, make them all of Hair, or all of Silk, that is white; becauſe it's ſtrongeſt, and will not rot ſo quickly as colour'd Silk.

§ 9 When you have twiſted your Links, lay them in cold Water for one hour, then twiſt them over again before you tye them into a Line; otherwiſe a Hair or two will ſhrink, and be ſhorter than the reſt, at firſt Fiſhing with it, and is ſo much of the ſtrength of the Line loſt, for want of firſt watering, and then re-twiſting it.

§ 10. Do not arm, fix, or whip Hooks to any Line, either for Ground or Fly Angling, that conſiſts of more than three or four Links, at the moſt: but if the Hair be long, and the lowermoſt Link conſiſts of three Hairs, then you may whip to one that conſiſts of two Links only:

only: The top of the uppermoſt Link having a ſmall loop, or water nooſe, you may to any Line put the ſame, and as eaſily remove it; there being another loop, or water nooſe, at the bottom of your Line.

The length of a Dub-fly Line.

§ 11. Your Line for Dub-fly, Caſt-fly, or Artificial-fly (which are all one and the ſame) ſhould be about 3 yards longer than the Rod, or almoſt twice the length of the Rod, if the River be not encumbred with Wood or Trees on its Banks; if ſo, let it be ſhorter, but longer than the Rod, and let the Hair be a white or darkiſh white colour.

The thickneſs of Caſt-fly Lines.

§ 12. To Angle for Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts (no bigger than a very large Herring) with the Dub-fly; let the two firſt Links next the Hook be but of one Hair apiece, but the Hair muſt be ſtrong, and of the thicker ends only, and choſen for the purpoſe; the next two Links of two Hairs, and next to that muſt conſiſt of three Hairs; at the top whereof have a water nooſe, or loop, to put your Line to; whoſe lowermoſt Link conſiſts of three Hairs, and has another water nooſe at bottom, to fix your Fly of three or four Links to; then let two of the next Links of your

your Line be four Hairs, and ſo proceed, by increaſing one Hair until you come to ſix, or ſeven Hairs, at the top; let the ſingle Hairs, and three or four next Links, be of a white, or darkiſh white colour.

§ 13. But many think this too ſmall, eſpecially where there are very large Trouts, and therefore for Caſt-fly Angling conſtantly adviſe two of the firſt Links next the Hook to be of two Hairs apiece, the next above them of three Hairs, to which have a water nooſe; then two or three Hairs apiece, and then proceed with four, five, ſix, and ſeven, to the topmoſt Link.

§ 14. Others there are, and good Anglers too, that adviſe the two Links next the Hook to conſiſt of three Hairs apiece; then one Link of four, at top whereof to have a water nooſe; then four, five, ſix, and ſeven, to the topmoſt Link; which I like very well, if the River abound with large Trouts, and the Water either be clearing after Rain, or be very full, or ſwelled more than uſually.

Now, ſince you have all directed, make choice according to your skill, practice, and dexterity: Moſt, when they Angle with three Hairs next the Hook, make a water nooſe on the top of the ſecond Link, eſpecially if the Hair be long.

You may much advantage your ſelf in caſting your Lines, eſpecially the Artificial Fly-Line, by making the uppermoſt Link or Gil-

dard

dard to conſiſt of twelve or nine Hairs, and one or two Hairs leſs in the next Link, and ſo abate proportionably in every Link, until you come to the Hook; by this means any Tyro Angler will caſt a Fly well, and quickly become an accurate Artiſt; and if you chance to faſten your Hook, and cannot come to looſen it, you'll not loſe above one Gildard, or two at moſt, though you pull to break it: Becauſe the Line is ſo ſtrong at the upper end, and you may Angle with ſtronger Lines at the Caſt-fly than at Ground, in a clear Water, for the Trout. For a clear Water at Ground for Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts, never uſe a Line made otherwiſe than is before directed, at Sect. 12. of this Chapter; only have not above four Hairs in any one Link of the Line.

Your Lines thus made, will cauſe the Rod and Line to be in a manner taper, from the very Hand to the Hook, and the Line to fall much better and ſtraighter, and caſt your Fly or Bait to any certain Place your Hand and Eye ſhall direct, with leſs weight and violence, that would otherwiſe circle the Water, and fright away Fiſh.

Length and thickneſs of a Line for running Worm, in a clear Water.

§ 15. Anglers differ in opinion about the length of running Worm Line in a clear Water,

ter, for Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts; ſome would have it longer than Rod, others length of Rod, and a third ſort, 2 yards ſhorter than Rod, which I, by my own experience, beſt approve of; although each of theſe lengths of Line may in ſome Rivers and Seaſons be more proper than other; as the Line longer than Rod, when the Water is exceeding bright and low, is beſt; for thickneſs, let the two or three lowermoſt Links or Lengths be of one Hair apiece, and then proceed as is before directed for Caſt-fly Line, at Sect. 12. of this Chapter: But let no part of this Line be above four Hairs in thickneſs, in any one Link. Let the Hair be of a white colour, or rather a duskiſh white colour, not perfectly white.

Length and thickneſs of running Line for muddy Water.

§ 16. Let the Line for running Worm in muddy Water, the three lowermoſt Links at leaſt, be of Cheſnut, Brown, or Sorrel colour, and from Hook upwards, the thickneſs of the Line before directed, at the 14. Sect. of this Chapter, and but half length of Rod.

The Float or Cork Lines length and thickneſs.

§ 17. The Line for Float Angle ſhould be made as that directed at the 14. Sect. of this Chapter for thickneſs; but ſhould be as long,

or

or rather longer than the Rod for Rivers, but ſhorter than the Rod for Ponds, Pits, Mears, and ſtanding Waters, and the colour of three or four lowermoſt Links, according to the colour of the Water; that is, a Cheſnut, Sorrel, or Brown colour, for a muddy Water; but a dark white, or grey, for clear Rivers and Waters.

The Dibbing Line.

§ 18. The Dibbing Line ſhould be of the ſame length and thickneſs of a Line for running Worm, in a muddy Water; or it may be a Hair or two thicker, becauſe little of the Line comes into the Water: And in this way of Angling you may expect the biggeſt Fiſh; and wanting length to give him Line, after he is ſtruck, you muſt be forc'd to tug for't; yet ſometimes this Line may be as long as Rod, or near it, if a gentle Wind blow from the Bank you ſtand on.

§ 19. I have often for the Ground Angle made my Links of three Hairs to conſiſt of two Hairs, of a Sorrel, Brown, or Cheſnut colour, and one of White, ſometimes two White Hairs and one Hair of Cheſnut, Sorrel, or Brown colour'd Hair, and do like it very well.

§ 20. At the bottom of every Line have a ſmall water nooſe, or loop, that you may hang a Hook of any ſize, whip'd to a Line, conſiſting of two or three Links; or change your Hook,

Hook, and two or three lowermoſt Links, as you pleaſe. If it be a Line of one Hair next Hook, let the nooſe be at a Link of three Hairs; if a Line of three Hairs next Hook, let the water nooſe be at a Link conſiſting of four Hairs.

I have been the more preciſe in deſcribing the Lines, becauſe many Anglers underſtand them not, and, to their no ſmall prejudice, are very careleſs therein: For good and neat Tackle much conduces to his Sport, eſpecially in Angling for Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts, in clear Rivers.

The trowling Line.

§ 21. Let the trowling Line be made of four or ſix fold of Hemp Yarn, finely Spun of the beſt Hemp, and let the folds be neatly twiſted together; its length ſhould be 20 or 30 yards long, and have alſo 3 yards next the Hook of ſtrong white Silk neatly made. Some uſe green or sky coloured Silk, and ſome make the trowling Line all of Silk, either green or sky colour'd.

Barbel and Chub Line.

§ 22. The Barbel and Chub Lines muſt be very ſtrong, ſeven Hairs at leaſt next Hook, and twelve at top of the Line; ſome uſe a Line of Silk that is white, becauſe white Silk is al-

ways ſtrongeſt, and not ſo apt to rot as others; and ſome uſe green or sky colour'd Silk.

CHAP. III.

Of Hooks, Floats, Leading Lines, Plumbs, and the reſt of the Angler's Tackle.

THE beſt Hooks are made by one Mr. *Denton* that lives about *Yeland* in *Yorkſhire*, and by *John Perkin*, and *William Perkin*, that live in *Sadleworth* in *Yorkſhire*; which three Perſons are very excellent Trout Anglers.

Hooks.

§ 1. The Wyer of the Hooks ſhould be ſmall, and ſuch as will not ſtretch; the Points ſo well temper'd, that they'll not become dull with Fiſhing, but ſtill preſerve their keenneſs; all which *Denton*'s Hooks will perform.

The *London* Hooks are of too thick a Wyer, and of too open, and ill contriv'd compaſs; which, although they may ſerve or ſuit for a River abounding with Weeds, by reaſon of the wideneſs of their compaſs or bent, being ſomething more eaſily to be looſed when entangled with Weeds, which is all they are good

good for; nevertheleſs I totally reject them in Fiſhing with Dub-fly, or in ſtony Rivers, by reaſon they will become ſpeedily dull; and for that a Fiſh will quickly get off the Hook, by reaſon of their open bent.

§ 2. Let the Hooks be long in the ſhank, and of a compaſs ſomewhat inclining to roundneſs, but the point muſt ſtand even and ſtraight, and the bending muſt be in the ſhank; for if the ſhank be ſtraight, the point will hang outward, though when ſet on it ſtand right, yet it will, after the taking of a few Fiſh, cauſe the Hair at the end of the ſhank to ſtand bent, and conſequently the point of the Hook to hang directly upwards.

§ 3. Whether you Angle at top or bottom, proportion your Hooks for ſtrength and compaſs to the number of the Hairs you Angle with next Hook; and uſe not a ſmall Hook to great Baits, nor a great Hook to ſmall Baits. Barbels and Chubs muſt have large Hooks, but Pearches, Carps, Tenches, Breams, and Eels, Hooks of a far leſs ſize, not too large. Trouts in clear Waters, and Graylings, Salmon Smelts, Roches, Dates, Ruffs, and Gudgeons, muſt be Angled for with ſmall Hooks: And although many uſe great Hooks for Trouts, in muddy Waters eſpecially, yet it's not ſo ſure a way as to Angle with ſmall ones, and experience will convince you of the inconvenience of great Hooks; but the great Salmon muſt have a large and ſtrong Hook.

Whipping Hooks.

§ 4. When you ſet on the Hook (which is ſtil'd arming, fixing, or whipping Hooks) do it with ſmall but ſtrong Silk, well rubbed with Shoomakers Wax, and lay your Hair on the inſide of the Hook; for, if on the outſide, the Silk will cut and fret it aſunder, and it is not ſo apt to ſtrike Fiſh: And to avoid the fretting of the Hair, by the Hook on the inſide, ſmooth all the Hook on a Whet-ſtone, from the inſide to the back of the Hook ſlope-ways, and from a Straws breadth, below the top of the Hook, wrap the Silk about the bare Hook, until you come to the top of the ſhank; then lay your Line on the inſide, and whip with your Silk downwards, until you arrive almoſt at the bent of the Hook, and then cut off the end of the Gildard, and faſten.

Whip your Hooks for Angling with Worms, with red colour'd Silk; but for Paſte, Cod-bait, and other whitiſh Baits, with white colour'd Silk, and ſome do it with a white or red colour'd Hair, and ſome with Flax or Hemp: But ſtrong and ſmall Silk I like beſt.

How to arm a briſtled Hook you will ſee hereafter, when we diſcourſe of Cod-baits.

Propor-

Proportion of Hooks.

Hooks for Dub-fly generally ſhould be ſmall, ſo for Cod-bait, but larger for Worms; yet I like not Angling at Worm, eſpecially in a clear Water, with ſo large a Hook as ſome do.

Of Floats.

§ 5. Floats ſhould evermore be of Cork for Rivers; but Quills and Pens are beſt for Pits, Ponds, Mears, and ſtanding Waters, (being not able to bear the ſtrong Streams in Rivers) and Angling near top in very ſlow Rivers, and eſpecially with Paſts or tender Baits.

§ 6. Obtain the beſt Cork you can without flaws, or holes, bore the Cork through with a ſmall hot Iron, then put into it a Quill of a fit Proportion, neither too large to ſplit it, or ſo ſmall to ſlip out, but as it may ſtick in very cloſely; then pare (either with a ſharp Pen-knife or Raſor) the Cork into the form of a Pyramid, ſmall Pear, Egg, or Nutmeg, and into what bigneſs you pleaſe; then upon a ſmall Grind-ſtone, or with a Pumice-ſtone, make it compleat; for you cannot pare it ſo ſmooth as you may grind it, and have Corks of all ſizes.

§ 7. After you have ſhaped your Cork, bore with a ſmall hot Iron a hole from end to end,

through the midſt thereof, into that hole thruſt a Quill, and cut the Quill off even with the Cork at each end, and through the Quill draw the Line, and faſten them both together with a Wedg of the uppermoſt hard end of the Gooſe Quill, the Feather being ſtript off; let the Wedg be 2 inches long, and white, which will be beſt diſcernable; then place the ſmaller end of the Cork towards the Hook, and the bigger towards the Rod, that the ſmaller end ſinking down with the Hook, the bigger may float aloft, and bear the Wedg directly erect; which, when pull'd under the ſurface of the Water, is the certain ſignal of the Fiſhes biting, unleſs by accident the Hook or Line become entangled, or ſtayed by ſome Stone, piece of Wood, or Weeds.

§ 8. Cork, in form of a Nutmeg or Egg, being biggeſt in the midſt, and ſmall at each end, is a little apter to ſink, and will not carry ſo weighty a plumb of Lead; yet on clear bottoms, and Angling with Bait ſome diſtance from Ground, and in ſlow running Rivers, it will do very well, and better than others.

§ 9. Furniſh your ſelf with Corks and Quills of all ſizes, and let the Cork be ſo poized with Lead, on the Line, that the Quill which is in it, being about 2 inches long, will ſwim upright; and ſo juſtly and equally balanced with Lead, that the leaſt bite or nibble will ſink the Cork.

Leading

Leading Lines.

§ 10. For Leading Lines, I account the ſmall round Pellet or Lead-ſhot beſt, eſpecially for ſtony Rivers and running Line, let it be cloven, and neatly cloſed about your Line, and let not above two plumbs be on the Line at once, an inch and a half, or 2 inches diſtant from each other, and the lowermoſt plumb about 7 or 8 inches diſtant from the Hook, for a running Line, either in a clear or muddy Water, but 9 or 10 inches of Hook for a float Line: But if the River run on a Sandy bottom, and be full of Wood, with few Stones, Plumbs, or Lead, in Shape of a Diamond, or of a Barley Corn, or of an Oval form, is beſt, the ends being ſmooth and cloſe laid down, either for a muddy Water or float Angling. Many, when they Angle amongſt Weeds, place their Lead on the ſhank of the Hook, and conceive it not ſo apt to entangle on them.

§ 11. When you Angle with the running Line, let the Line have as much Lead as will fit the Stream and River in which you Angle, and no more; *viz.* more in a great troubleſom and rough Water and Stream, than in a ſmaller that is calmer and quieter, as near as may be, ſo much as will ſink the Bait to the bottom, and will permit the ſame to be kept in motion, by continually rowling on the Ground, and no more. This Rule is to be obſerved in

float Angling in Rivers. Some cover their Lead on their Lines with Shoomaker's Wax as thin as may be.

§ 12. As the day increaſes, your Pellet or Plumb of Lead may be leſſer; for that will carry readily at five a Clock in the morning at running Line, which will ſink and faſten the Line at nine a Clock: For in Droughts Rivers generally abate, as heat increaſes.

When you Angle in a very ſtony River that's clear, with the running Line, the Stones are apt to rub the ſmall Pellet or Lead bright, and that ſcares away the Fiſh; therefore, when it does ſo, remove the bright Lead, and put on other Lead that is black.

Lead Plummet.

§ 13. In a Piſtol Bullet, make a hole through it, and put therein a ſtrong Thread twiſted; and, when occaſion is, hang this on the Hook, to try the depth of the River or Pond, eſpecially when you Angle with the Float, and the Bait is to be near the bottom, or but juſt touch it.

Whetſtone.

§ 14. Procure a little Whetſtone about two inches long, one quarter of an inch ſquare, which is far better, to whet or ſharpen Hooks on, than a File, though never ſo fine or good; for it either will not touch a well-temper'd Hook, or leave it rough, but not ſharp: And we

we always, to avoid the fretting of the Hair by the Hook, ſmooth all the Hook on a Whetſtone, from the inſide to the back of the Hook ſlope-ways.

Line Caſes.

§ 15. Get a Caſe made of red Leather, like a Comb Caſe, with 12 or 14 partitions therein, made of the fineſt thin Parchment, with a flap to cover over the edges to prevent loſing any thing out of them; in the ſeveral partitions keep Hooks ready whipt to Lines of two or three Gildards in length, and ready leaded likewiſe, ſpare Links, Lines of all lengths or ſorts, Silk of all ſorts and colours, hair, and ſingle ſtrong Hairs, Hooks. Theſe Caſes contain much, and lye in a ſmall room in the Pocket; in one of theſe Caſes you may put all your tackle ready fixt for the running Line in a muddy and clear Water; in another, all the tackle for the ground Angling with Float; in another (which muſt be large) the Angling tackle for great Fiſh, as Chub, Barbel, great Salmon; in another, your Angling tackle for Pike, which muſt likewiſe be very large: So that when you travel from home, you may Angle any where for moſt ſorts of Fiſh at ground, if you carry but a good Rod with you made of Haſle, and the pieces put into each other, and it will ſerve for a walking Staff; ſuch as theſe you may buy ready made in *London*, and other places.

How

How to keep Cod-baits, &c.

§ 16. Make Bags of Linnen and Woollen to keep and carry all ſorts of Baits in; alſo a piece of Cane, with holes bor'd therein, to keep Caterpillars, Palmers, Woolbeds, natural Flies, Bobs, or any ſort of Inſects; a Horn for Gentles; Boxes of diverſe ſizes to carry Hooks, Silk, Lead, Thread, Corks, Floats of Quills, Shoomaker's Wax, and Dub-flies in; alſo have a neat and ſharp Pen-knife. The following way is eſteemed a ſecret, and the beſt way to carry and keep Cod-baits, Caterpillars, Clap-baits, natural Flies, and Oak-worm in, for to give Cod-baits Water is ſoon to rot them, becauſe they are as well kept in a piece of withy Bark, that ſome of them will live therein to be turn'd to Flies: 'Tis thus, cut a round Bough of fine green bark'd Withy, about the thickneſs of half ones Arm, and taking the Bark clear off, about a foot in length, turn both ends together from the middle, and let them infold within each other, and then tye it with a String on the top, and ſtop it with a Cork or piece of Stick; in this put the aforeſaid Baits, and every Night lay it in the Graſs, and uſe it next Day, or let it lie until you have occaſion for them: The Dew preſerves them, and makes them ſcour and thrive. Thus you may keep Cod-baits, Graſhoppers, *&c.* for the moiſture of the Bark contri-

contributes much to their preſervation, yet it's convenient to bore ſmall holes in it for their better perſpiration, although the bark be very porous.

The Landing Net and Hook.

§ 17. Have a ſmall long Pole made with a Loop at the end, like a Water-nooſe, to which faſten a ſmall Net to Land great Fiſh, without which you'll be in danger to loſe them: But if you Angle for Pike, Barbel, Chevin, or great Salmons, get a large Hook, call'd a landing Hook, with a Screw at the end to ſcrew into a Socket, fixed at the end of a long Pole, to ſtrike into the mouth or any part of the Fiſh, to draw them to Land.

You may alſo fit to the ſame Socket and Pole two other Hooks, one ſharp to cut Weeds away, the other to pull out Wood.

The Panier.

§ 18. Let the Panier be light, made of peel'd willow Twigs, neatly work'd up.

Materials for the Angler to carry with him.

§ 19. Carry with you all ſorts of Hooks, Lines, Links ready twiſted, Hair, Silk of diverſe colours, ſmall but ſtrong Thread, Leads, Plummets,

Plummets, Floats of all ſorts and ſizes, Shoomaker's Wax, Pen-knife, Whet-ſtone, Line-caſes, Worm-bags, Hooks, Boxes, Hooks ready fixt to Lines of two or three Links or Gildards in length, Baits, Flies, Dubbing-bag, Worm-bags, Horn for Gentles, a neat and ſharp pair of Sciſſars, and Rod.

CHAP. IV.

Of Baits.

§ 1. HAving inſtructed our Angler with what Tackle to be accoutred, the next Diſcourſe directs him how to find, order, manage, keep and preſerve all ſorts of natural Baits; which generally are Inſects, or Creatures bred of Putrefaction, and are a ſmall, fleſhleſs and bloodleſs Vermin, divided (in ſome ſort) between the Head, Body and Belly, as an Ant, Fly, Bee, *&c.* under which the Earth-worm, Caterpillar, *&c.* are alſo comprehended. Firſt, he's to obſerve that Earth-worms are a general Bait for all ſorts of Fiſh whatſoever, and that they and Gentles continue in Seaſon the whole Year; the Earth-bob from *Martinmas* until almoſt *May* Day; and the Cow-turd-bob from *May* Day until *Michaelmas*; Flies, Palmers, or Woollbeds,

beds, Caterpillars, Cod-baits, and Worms bred on Herbs, Plants or Trees, as the Oak-worm, *&c.* all Summer. And know, that that when one ſort of Baits comes in ſeaſon the preceding are not uſeleſs; and whenſoever you Angle at ground, in clear Water, have both Earth-worms, Cod-bait, Gentles, and Bobs in readineſs with you, and in more likelihood ſucceſs will attend your Labours: But if yougo to Angle for Trouts in a muddy Water, with running Line, you need only take Brandlings, Gilt-tails, Tag-tails, and Meadow-worms with you; if the three laſt are not to be eaſily got, then Brandlings only: And you may have ſome ſcoured in Moſs and Water only, others, as is directed, with Riddle, and others with grave Earth: For ſometimes they'll take the Worm kept one way, and ſometimes the other, and that all on the ſame Day, and in two Hours ſpace.

Of Worms there are diverſe ſorts; ſome bred in the Earth, and therefore call'd Earth-worms, or Worms ſimply, without any addition; ſuch are the Dew-worm, Red-worm, Brandling, Gilt-tail, Tag-tail, and Meadow-worm: Others are bred on Herbs, Plants or Trees, as Palmers or Wooll-beds, Caterpillars, Oak-worm, and Cabbage or Colewort-worm; others on Excrements or ſome dead Fleſh, as Gentles, Waſps, *&c.* of all which this Chapter treats.

Dew-

Dew-worm, Garden-worm, Lob-worm, or Twatchel,

§ 2. Are but one Worm, although called in different Places by all the ſaid Names, and it's the principal Worm for Salmons, Chevins, Trouts, Barbels, and Eels that are of the greateſt ſize; but for ſmaller Fiſh, though of the ſame Species, it's not ſo proper. Of theſe, ſome be called Squirrel-tails, which have a red Head, a ſtreak down the Back, and a broad Tail; and theſe are eſteemed the beſt, becauſe they are tougheſt, moſt lively, and live longeſt in the Water: For with a dead Worm you are in all probability to catch little or nothing. This Worm is found in a Garden or Church-yard, late in a Summers Evening, with a Lanthorn; or in great Droughts pound Walnut Leaves, and put the Juice thereof, mixt with a little Water, into their holes, and it drives them out of the Ground.

Brandling, Gilt-tails, and Red-worms,

§ 3. Are the principal Worms for all ſorts of Fiſh, and are generally to be found in old Dunghills, or ſome very rotten Earth or Place near to them, but uſually in Cow-dung or Hogs-dung rather than Horſe-dung, which is ſomewhat too hot and dry for them; but

the

the beſt are to be found in Tanners Bark which they caſt up in heaps after they hav uſed it about their Leather. Theſe, eſpecially the two firſt, are the prime Worms Anglers uſe for Trouts, Graylings, Salmor Smelts, Gudgeon, Pearch, Tench and Bream; theſe three laſt take the Red-worm well ſcoured, very well: The Brandlings and Gilt-tails are taken by Trouts and Grayling, both in muddy and clear Waters, but the Red-worm beſt in muddy Waters. Some ſay, the Brandling is the beſt Worm for a Trout, others the Gilt-tail; but if you Angle with two Worms on the Hook at once, as is generally uſed for Trouts in muddy Waters, then put both a Brandling and Gilt-tail on the Hook at once, the Gilt-tail the latter.

Marſh or Meadow-worms

§ 4. Are got out of Marſh ground, or the fertile Banks of Rivers, and is a little blewiſh, and ſhould be well ſcoured, and then it's both tough and ſprightly. 'Tis a choiſe Worm in *March*, *April* and *September*, for Trouts, Salmon Smelts, Gudgeon, Grayling, Flounder, Breams and Pearch; and ſome will conſtantly uſe this Worm from *Candlemas* until *Michaelmas*, and prefer it before either Brandling or Gilt-tail; and it requires more time to be well ſcoured in than either Brandling or Gilt-tail, and ſhould be kept in

Moſ

Moſs and Water, fifteen Days at leaſt, before uſed.

Tag-tail

§ 5. Is a Worm of the colour of a Man's Hand, or a pale Fleſh colour, with a yellow Tag on his Tail, almoſt half an inch long: They are found in Marled Lands or Meadows, after a ſhower of Rain, or in a Morning, in Weather that is calm and not cold, in *March* and *April*. It's a very good Worm for Trouts; and there are Anglers that affirm, that there is not a better Bait in the World for a Trout, if you Angle with them whilſt the Water is diſcoloured by Rain; ſome commend it likewiſe for a Grayling: This Worm will not endure long ſcouring.

§ 6. Note, that the Dew-worm, Red-worm, and Meadow-worm will abide more ſcouring than any of the before-mentioned Worms, and are better for long keeping.

How to order, keep, and ſcour Worms.

§ 7. Put your Worms into very good long Moſs, whether white, red, or green, is not much material, but the ſoft white Moſs that grows on ſome Heaths is beſt; (but it's difficult to be found in ſome Places and Countrys) waſh it well, and cleanſe it from all Earth and Filth, wring it very dry, then put your

your Moſs and Worms into an earthen Pot, cover it cloſe, that they crawl not out; ſet it in a cool place in Summer, and in Winter in a warm place, that the froſt kill them not; every fourth Day in Summer change the Moſs, once a Week in the Winter, or, at leaſt, let the Moſs be taken from them, and clean waſhed in freſh Spring-water, and ſqueezed betwixt your Hands till it be pretty dry, and then put it to them again: The longer you keep them, eſpecially the Lob-worm, Marſh-worm and Red-worm, before you uſe them, the better; ſome mingle Camomil or Fennel with the Moſs. Clean ſcouring Worms makes them redder, clearer, tougher, ſprightlier, live long on the Hook, and keep colour, and conſequently more deſirable by Fiſh. If you be in haſte, a little Bole-armoniack put to them will further your deſire, and make them ſcour in a ſhort time: Or you may put the Dew-worm, Red-worm, three or four Hours in Water, and they will ſcour themſelves, but be very weak, yet a few Hours in good Moſs will recover them; then obſerve when the Knot near the middle of the Brandling begins to ſwell, he's Sick, and, if not well look'd to, is near Death; but, leſt they die, you may feed them with Crumbs of Bread and Milk, or fine Flower and Milk, or the Yolk of an Egg and ſweat Cream coagulated over the Fire, give them a little and often.

Or, if you be in haſte, put your Brandlings,

Gilt-tails, *&c.* into Moſs that's exceeding wet, and it will quickly ſcour them, but not keep them long; but when you go to Angle, remove them into Moſs, out of which the Water is very well wrung or ſqueezed.

Some wet their Moſs very well in ſweet Milk, or, which is far better, Ale-wort (in which there has been no Hops) and then ſqueeze it pretty well, and over-night put the Worms therein they intend to uſe the next day, and think Fiſh like them better; but the Worms muſt not reſt long in the Moſs thus wet in Milk or Ale-wort, in regard it will much ſwell them, and in twenty four Hours ſpoil them; but if you put them in freſh Moſs and Water, when you have finiſhed your days Angling, it will well revive and recover them.

Others, and expert Anglers, keep them in Moſs, and good ſtore of Earth caſt out of a Grave; the leſs time the party hath been buried the better, and put them in freſh Moſs, and ſome of this Earth, when they go to Angle, and thoſe that uſe this much, boaſt of its excellency in alluring Fiſh. I know ſome ingenious Anglers that in the Spring, and for a muddy Water, uſe to ſhave Riddle or red Oker (with which People in *Lancaſhire* uſe to mark their Sheep) into the Moſs they keep their Worms in, and ſometimes thoſe Baits will be taken eagerly, when the brighter (that is, thoſe kept in Moſs and Water only) will

will not at all be taken, and perhaps within an Hour again the bright ones will be taken, and the radled Worms refuſed. Now ſince all ways are diſcovered to you for keeping and ordering your Worms, elect that way which Experience aſſures you to be the beſt; only this let me obſerve, that if I could otherwiſe help it, I would never have my Brandlings or Gilt-tails kept in Moſs, and the Water well ſqueezed out of it, (which way I only uſe) leſs than 48 Hours, or above 10 Days; but I often Angle with them when they are not ſcoured 18 Hours, but 'tis not ſo good.

Palmer-worm, Palmer-fly, Wooll-bed, and Cankers,

§ 8. Are all one Worm, bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees, and is, if not a perfect Catterpillar, yet a ſpecies thereof; theſe are rough and woolly on the outward parts, hence by ſome called Wooll-beds, and are good Baits either for Trout, Chub, Grayling, Roch, or Dace; Palmer-fly and May-fly are the very ground or foundation of all Fly Angling.

Catterpillars, Oak-worm, Cabbage-worm, Colewort-worm or Grub, Crabtree-worm or Jack

Are Worms bred on Herbs, Plants or Trees, and may be kept with the Leaves of thoſe Trees, Herbs or Plants on which they are bred, by renewing the Leaves often in a Day, and putting in freſh inſtead of the old ones: The Boxes they are kept in ſhould have a few ſmall holes bored therein, to let in Air, but you may keep them beſt as is already directed, Cap. 3. Sect. 16. in withy Bark.

Theſe are good Baits for Chub, Roch, Dace and Trout, *&c.* and Fiſh bite much better at the Oak-worm, or any Worm bred on Herbs, Plants or Trees, if you Angle with the ſame when they ſhew themſelves on the top of the Water, (as with the natural Fly) than if you uſe it under; for when a gale of Wind ſhaketh the Trees, the Worms fall into the Water, and preſently riſe and float on the top, where Fiſh riſe at them as at Flies; and indeed they ſink not till toſt and beaten by the Waves or Stream, and ſo they die and loſe their native colour, and then the Fiſh (as you may perceive by thoſe on your Hook) value them not; although theſe ſort of Baits are taken by Roch, Dace and Chub, well at the top of the Water, yet you may Angle

18 inches, or lower, within the VVater, and they do very well; or you may put one on the point of a Dub-fly Hook, and dib with it, or dib with the Aſh-fly and one of theſe on the point of the Hook for Trouts. The Oak-worm is a very good Bait, and of a fine Green colour, and in Ponds is a Murtherer of Roch and Dace.

To get theſe Baits, beat on an Oak, Crab-tree, or Haw-thorn, that grows over an High-way or bare Place, and they'll fall for you to gather; or go to Cabbages or Coleworts, *&c.* and there ſeek for them.

Some think the Palmer-worm, Catterpillar, *&c.* are bred from a Dew left on the Leaves of Trees, Herbs, Plants or Flowers, Coleworts or Cabbages, which being condenſed by the Suns generative heat, do in three days become living Creatures, of ſeveral ſhapes and colours, ſome being hard and tough, ſome ſmooth and ſoft, ſome are horned in their Head, ſome in their Tail, and ſome have none; ſome have Hair on them, ſome none; and ſome of them are ſaid to be bred on the Eggs or Spawn of the Catterpillar, and in time turn to be Butter-flies; and generally all Flies, being bred of putrefaction, receive life, or vivify, as the Suns heat furthers or diſpoſes the ſeminal Vertue, by which they are bred, unto animation.

Bobs

§ 9. Are of two ſorts, the one found or bred in mellow, reſty, heathy, ſandy, light Soils, and gathered after the Plow when the Land is firſt broke up from Grazing, (and is call'd the Earth-bob, White-grub, or White-bait) and is a Worm as big as two Maggots, hath a red Head, and is all ſoft, and full of whitiſh Guts; you may eaſily know in what Grounds moſt are, for there the Crows will be Watching, and follow the Plow very cloſe; or you your ſelf may dig one Spade graft deep in ſandy, heathy Ground, that has lain long reſt from the Plow, and find ſufficient of them.

Theſe are a choice Bait from the Firſt of *November* until after mid *April* for Chub, Roch, Dace, Salmon Smelts, Trout, Bream, Tench and Carp.

When you gather theſe, put them into a Pot or Firkin, with ſufficient of the Soil they were bred in, to preſerve them, then ſtop the Veſſel exceeding cloſe, or all will ſpoil; ſet them where neither Wind nor Froſt may in the leaſt offend them, and they'll keep all Winter for your uſe, and ſo you'll always be ready furniſhed.

Some, in the Morning they go to Angle, boil thoſe they intend to uſe that Day in Milk or Water, one or two Minutes, and then pour them

them on a Sieve, but they'll not keep after boiling above two Days: In like manner, you may boil the brood of Waſps, Hornets, Humble Bees, *&c.* and they'll thereby become ſomething tougher, and look well on the Hook, as more plump, white, and be more tough; and ſome put theſe Baits in a little Earth and Honey, the Day before they Angle with them, for Carp or Bream, *&c.* or put them in a Box with Gum Ivy.

Cow-turd-bob, or Clap-bait.

§ 10. The other Bob is found under a Cow-turd (from about *May*-day until *Michaelmas*) that reſts on ſuch a Ground as the other is found in, and is alſo called a Clap-bait in ſome places; 'tis an excellent Bait for Trout, if you Angle with it as a Cod-bait is uſed, on the top of the Water with a briſtled Hook, only you may ſometimes put a pair of Artificial Wings and Head, ſuch as is uſed for the Dub-fly, on the top of the Hook. This Bait is almoſt like a Gentle, but bigger, and is kept in wet Moſs, but above 3 or 4 Days it will not keep in Moſs; therefore keep it as you are directed to keep a Cod-bait, at *chap.* 3. *Sect.* 16. in withy Bark.

Fiſh of all ſorts likewiſe take the Clap-bait, within the Water, as the Trout, Salmon Smelt, Grayling, Chub, Roch, Dace, Carp, Bream, Tench, *&c.* For Trout and Salmon Smelt,

I think, you may imitate it with yellow Bees-wax, and Angle at top therewith; having an Artificial, or Dub-head and Wings at top of the Hook.

Cod-bait, Cadiſs-worm, Cad-bait, or Caſe-worm

§ 11. Are all one and the ſame Bait, and of theſe there are 2 ſorts, ſome ſay 3, one bred under Stones that lie a little hollow in ſhallow Rivers, or ſmall Brooks, in a very fine Gravelly Caſe, or Husk; theſe are yellow when ripe; and are the beſt ſort of Cod-bait, and are bigger than a Gentle; having a Black, or, at leaſt, a blackiſh Head.

The other ſort are found in Pits, Ponds, ſlow-running Rivers, or Ditches, in Caſes, or Husks of Water-weeds, Sticks, Straw, or Ruſhes; and are call'd by ſome, a Straw-worm, or Ruffcoat. Both theſe ſorts are excellent Baits for Trouts, Graylings, and moſt ſorts of Fiſh, as Carp, Tench, Bream, Chub, Roch, Dace, Salmon Smelts, and Bleak.

The green Sort breed in Pits, Ponds, and Ditches, are found in *March*, before the yellow ones come; the other yellow ſort come in *May*, or the end of *April*, and are out of Seaſon in *July*; a third ſort, but ſmaller, come in again in *Auguſt*.

§ 12. Theſe

§ 12. Theſe Cod-baits cannot endure the Wind and Cold; therefore keep them in a thick woollen Bag with ſome moiſt Gravel, or Sand amongſt them, got out of the ſame River, Rill, or Brook, the Cod-baits you get were bred in; wet them once a Day if in the Houſe, but oftner in hot Weather; when you carry them forth, fill the Bag full of Water, then hold the mouth cloſe, that they drop not out, and ſo let the Water run from them: Thus they have been kept 3 Weeks: Or you may put them in an earthen Pot full of Water, with ſome of the Gravel they were bred in, at the bottom, and take them forth into your Bag as you have occaſion to uſe them: But the beſt way of keeping them is as before is directed at *chap.* 3. *ſect.* 16.

Various Ways of Angling with the Cod-bait.

§ 13. One may Angle ſeveral ways with Cod-baits, either at bottom with a Float, or within a Foot of the bottom at mid-water, or at top: But if in a clear Water for the Trout, Grayling, or Salmon Smelt, uſe fine and ſmalleſt Lines never above one Hair for 2 or 3 Lengths next Hook, *&c.* Your Lines are to be almoſt length of Rod, and very light Leaded, if you Angle within the Water: Sometimes you may (when you uſe a Float) put on a

or

or 3 together; and ſometimes Cod-bait, to very great effect, is joyn'd with a Worm, and ſometimes to an Artificial Fly to cover the point of the Hook; and ſometimes it's put on the point of a Hook after an Oak Fly, and then they dib with it, or, which I like better, to let them ſink 9 or 10 Inches within the Water, continually raiſing, and gently moving it up and down within the Water, and at top. Some ſay Cod-bait, when uſed by it ſelf, is always to be Angled with at the bottom, and with the fineſt Tackle; and that it is for all times of the Year the moſt holding Bait of all other whatever, both for Trout, Salmon Smelt and Grayling: Others there are, that affirm, the beſt way to Angle with the Cod-bait, is to fiſh with it on the top of the Water for Trout, Grayling, or Salmon Smelt, as you do with the Fly; and it muſt ſtand on the ſhank of the Hook, as doth the Artificial Fly (for if it come into the bent of the Hook, the Fiſh will little or not at all value it, nor if you pull the blew Gut out of it) and to make it keep that place, you muſt, when you ſet on, or whip your Hook, faſten a ſtiff Horſe-hair, or Hogs-briſtle under the Silk, with the end ſtanding out about a Straws breadth at the head of the Hook, from under the Silk, and pointing towards the Line (which, by the way, let me tell you, is call'd a briſtled Hook when thus arm'd or whip'd;) and this will keep it either from ſlipping totally off, or from ſliding back into

into the bent of the Hook, by which means your whipping would be left naked and bare, and is neither ſo ſlightly, nor ſo likely to be taken; to remedy which (becauſe it often ſo falls out) ſome always whip the Hook they deſign for this Bait, with the whiteſt Horſe-hair, which it ſelf will reſemble and ſhine like that Bait, and conſequently do more good, or leſs harm than whipping with Silk or any other colour: Thus uſed, it's an excellent Bait for a Trout, Salmon Smelt or Grayling. You may, if you pleaſe, place a ſmall ſlender Lead upon the ſhank of the Hook, to ſink the Bait, and draw the Cod-bait over the Lead. You may alſo uſe to Angle with a Cod-bait, as a Dub-fly, if you put on the very top of the ſhank of the Hook, a pair of Artificial Wings, and a little below, a Briſtle, to keep up the Bait from ſlipping back.

Artificial Cod-bait.

You may make, for Trouts and Salmon Smelts, an Artificial, or Counterfeit Cod-bait, by making the body of yellow Bees-wax, and the Head of black dubbing and black Silk; or you may do it by making the body of yellow Waſh-leather, or rather Shammy, or Buff, and the head of black Silk.

Some Perſons make the Counterfeit Cod-bait of yellow Bees-wax, with an Artificial black dub'd head, and a pair of Wings at the head, and

and Angle therewith as at the Dub-fly. If you imitate the Cod-bait with yellow Bees-wax, and make the head of black dubbing and black Silk, and perform the ſame very artificially, it's an incomparable Bait for Trouts and Salmon Smelts. Theſe you may often let ſink to the bottom, and immediately raiſe again to the top. Some melt yellow Bees-wax, and therein dip a yellow Crewel often, and then wrap this about the ſhank of the Hook, and put a head on, as before is taught, *&c.* And ſome make uſe of a piece of a ſmall yellow Wax-candle, to imitate the Cod-bait, and put a dub'd Head and Wings on the top of the Hook.

Thoſe Cod-baits that are Natural, are moſt excellent Baits for Trouts, Graylings, Salmon Smelts, Chubs, Roch, Dace, Pearch, Carp, Tench, Ruff, Bream and Bleak; and the Artificial Cod-bait is for Trouts and Salmon Smelts only; and Trouts take the Cod-bait in clear Waters only, but never in muddy Waters; ſo do Salmon Smelts.

You may bait the Natural Cod-bait, as is directed for the Bark-worm, in the next *ſect.* if you uſe but one only. Cod-baits, when they are full ripe, turn into Flies of ſeveral ſorts, as the Cod-baits are, eſpecially into the Green-drake, *&c.*

Bark-worm, or Aſh-grub

§ 14. Are all one and the ſame, and are plump, milk-white, bent round from Head to Tail, and exceeding tender, with a red Head, reſembling a young Dore, or Humble-bee; it is in Seaſon all the Year, eſpecially from *Michaelmas* until mid *May* or *June*. It's the moſt proper Bait ſave any but the Fly and Cod-bait, for the Grayling; and Chub, Roch and Dace will likewiſe take it.

It's found under the Bark of an Oak, Aſh, Alder or Birch, eſpecially if they lie a Year, or more after they are fallen: Likewiſe it's found in the body of a rotted Alder, if you break it with an Axe; but be careful only to ſhake the Tree in pieces with beating, and cruſh not the Worm; you may alſo find it under the Bark of the ſtump of a Tree, if decayed.

He is very tender, therefore to be baited on ſuch a briſtled Hook as before is directed for the Cod-bait; and he's to be baited thus, *viz.* The Hook is to be put in under the Head or Chaps of the Bait, and guided down the middle of the Belly, without ſuffering it to peep out by the way, (for then it will iſſue out Water and milk, till nothing but the Skin remain, and the bent of the Hook will appear black through it) till the point of the Hook come ſo low, that the head of the Bait may reſt and ſtick on the Briſtle that comes out to hold it;

it; by which means it can neither ſlip of it ſelf, neither will the force of the Stream, nor quick pulling out on any miſtake, ſtrip it off. This Bait is uſually kept in Wheat-bran, and thereby grows tougher.

For Grayling you are to Angle with this Bait, with the ſmalleſt Lines, ſuch as is directed for a Trout, with a running Line in a clear Water; and you are always to uſe a Float, and the leaſt weight of Plumb or Lead you can, that will but ſink, and that the ſwiftneſs of the Stream will allow; and your Bait is always to be 7 or 8 Inches from the bottom: But for other Fiſh, as Chub, Roch, Dace, you may uſe Lines and Tackle proper for them, and Angle as is ſuitable for their humor.

I am very apt to think that Tench, Bream, Carp and Bleak will ſikewiſe very well take the Aſh-grub; but having never experienced them for theſe Fiſh, I dare not be poſitive, but refer you to your own Trials.

Flag-worm, or Dock-worm

§ 15. Are all one; to find them do thus: Go to an old Pond or Pit, where there are ſtore of Flags (or, as ſome call them, Sedges) pull ſome up by the Roots, then ſhake thoſe Roots in the Water, till all the Mud and Dirt be waſhed away from them, then amongſt the ſmall Strings or Fibres that grow to the Roots, you'll

you'll find little Husks or Caſes of a reddiſh or yellowiſh, and ſome of other colours; open theſe carefully with a Pin, and you'll find in them a little ſmall Worm, pale, yellow, or white as a Gentle, but longer and ſlenderer, with rows of Feet all down his Belly, and a red Head. This is an exceeding good Bait for Graylings, Tench, Bream, Carp, Roch and Dace. I am prone likewiſe to think it may do well for Chub, Bleak and Pearch.

If you pull the Flags in ſunder, and cut open the round Stalk, you'll alſo find a Worm like the former in the Husk, but tougher, and in that reſpect better: Both theſe Worms are to be kept in Wheat-bran, and baited on the briſtled Hook, as the Aſh-grub; and when you Angle for Graylings with them, uſe a Float, and the ſmalleſt Lines, and the Bait to be 8 or 9 Inches from the Ground. A Trout rarely takes either Aſh-grub, or Flag-worm.

Gentles, or Maggots.

§ 16. Gentles are kept with dead Fleſh, Beaſts Liver, or Suet; or, which is better, keep, cleanſe, or ſcour them in Meal, or Wheat-bran: You may breed them by pricking a Beaſts Liver full of holes; hang it in the Sun in Summer time, and ſet under an old courſe Barrel, or ſmall Firkin, with Clay and Bran in it; into which they will drop and fall, and therein cleanſe themſelves, and be always ready

ready for Uſe; and thus Gentles may be created until *Michaelmas*; but if you would fiſh with them from *Michaelmas* to *May-Day*, then get a dead Cat, Kite, or other Carrion, at the latter end of *September*, and let it be Fly-blown, and when the Gentles begin to be alive, ſtir, or creep, then bury it and them in ſoft, moiſt Earth, deep in the Ground, that the Froſt neither injure, nor kill them, and they'll ſerve to uſe till *March* or *April* following, about which time they'll turn to be Flies, commonly call'd Fleſh-flies.

Gentles are ſometimes added to a Worm, and ſometimes put on the point of a Dub-fly Hook, for Salmon Smelts, but moſt commonly they are uſed by themſelves, and that two or three on the Hook at a time; ſometimes when you go to fiſh with Gentles, put them in a Horn (wherein are ſmall holes bored to let in Air) with ſome Wheat-bran only; and ſome ſhave ſome of a Barber's Sweet-waſh Ball into the Bran; but the beſt things to put Gentles to, is to put them, the Day you Angle, in a Box, with ſome Gum-Ivy, and you'll find it of no ſmall effect, if you frequently try it.

Others anoint the Horn wherein the Gentles are, in Bran, with Hony; and others perfume the Horn wherein they are kept, with Musk and Civet. You may imitate a Gentle with white *Jerſey* Wool, if you be mindful to joyn it to another Bait or Fly for Salmon Smelts, when you Angle at top for them.

Gentles

Gentles are ſingular good Baits for Roch, Dace, Chub, Carp, Tench, Barbel, Bream and Bleak; and a Gudgeon and Trout will ſometimes take them in ſome Rivers and Seaſons, if the water be clear.

Sheeps Blood.

§ 17. Dry it in the Air upon a Board or Trencher, till it becomes pretty hard, then cut it into ſmall pieces, proportioned for the ſize of the Hook; ſome add a little Salt to it, which keeps it from growing black, and ſay, it makes it not worſe, but better: It's a good Bait for Chub, Roch, and Dace, if rightly ordered.

Grain, Wheat, Malt.

§ 18. When you uſe Grain, as Wheat, Malt, *&c.* boil it ſoft in Milk, or which is liked better, in Sweet-wort, and peel off the outward rind, which is the Bran, and then uſe it; or if you will, you may fry it in Hony and Milk, or ſteep it in ſome ſtrong-ſcented Oyls, as Amber, Spike, Polypody, Ivy, Anniſe, Turpentine, Oyl of Peter, *&c.* for Fiſh can ſmell, elſe Nature in vain had beſtowed Noſtrils on them, which were ridiculous to think. Grain is a good Bait either in Winter or Summer, for Chub, Roch, Dace and Bleak. That Fiſh can ſmell few doubt; but what ſort of

Smells they moſt delight in, or covet, that's the great Queſtion, and ſo ambiguous, that it's not yet perfectly known, whether ſweet, or ill-ſcented.

Ant-fly.

§ 19. When the Ant-fly is plentifulleſt (which is in the end of *June*, *July*, *Auguſt*, and moſt of *September*) go to the Ant-hills, or Mole-hills, where they breed, take a great handful of the Earth, with as much of the roots of the Graſs that groweth on thoſe Hillocks, put all into a large glaſs Bottle, then gather a great quantity of the blackeſt Ant-flies, their bodies and wings to be ſo choicely handled, as not to be in the leaſt bruiſed; put them into a Bottle or Firkin (if you would keep them long) firſt waſhed with Hony, or Water and Hony. Theſe in any ſtream and clear water, are a deadly Bait for Roch, Dace and Chub; and you muſt Angle with them under the water, no leſs than a handful from the bottom.

Take an Ant-fly or May-fly, (perhaps any other Fly may ſerve your turn) ſink him with a little Lead to the bottom, near to the Piles, Poſts of a Bridge, Poſts of a Weir, or Floodgate, or any other deep places, where Roches lie quietly, and then pull your Fly up very leiſurely, and uſually a Roch will follow your Bait, to the very top of the water, and gaze on

on it there, and run at it, and take it, leſt the Fly eſcape him. The Ant-fly may be kept alive, as is before directed, two or three Months; and Ant-flies are not altogether of the very ſame colour, ſome being blackiſh, others reddiſh, *&c.*

I preſume, it will be no unpleaſant Digreſſion to acquaint the Reader what a few Obſervations ſome have made on this ſmall, but naturally wiſe, induſtrious, and providently politick Creature, the Ant, or Piſmire, of which our Ant-fly is bred: It's obſerv'd to gather its Food in Summer, in the Full, and reſts in the New Moons: They are like a Commonwealth, and gather Corn, which they dry, and bite at both ends, that they may not grow: They wear away Stones by their aſſiduity, and make beaten Roadways; they help one another in drawing their Burdens, dam out water, and bury their dead. The Greater lead the way, and the Leſſer drag the Corn; and, when dirty, they cleanſe themſelves before they enter into their Habitations: They teach the Young to labour, but expel the Idle and Slothful; and when they carry their Grain, it's ſaid to be a Sign of foul weather. They caſt up the Earth over the mouth of their Caves (that the water may not enter in) wherein they have three Cells; in the one they live, in another they breed and bury, and in the third, they keep their Corn. They generate in Winter, bring forth Eggs, which,

in the Spring, are Ants: When old, they grow winged, and then ſuddenly after die.

Young Brood of Waſps, Hornets, and Humble-Bees.

§ 20. Dry them on a Fire-ſhovel or Tile-ſtone, or in an Oven, cooling after baking, leſt they burn, and to avoid that, lay them on a thin board or chip, and cover them with another, ſo ſupported as not to cruſh them, or elſe clap two Cakes together; this way they will keep long, and ſtick on the Hook well: If you boil them a minute or two in water or milk, they grow black in three or four Days, but are good for preſent Uſe: Theſe are ſingular good Baits for Roch, Dace, Chub, Eel, Bream, Flounder; and you may try them for Carp, Tench, Barbel and Bleak, which, I fancy, will ſcarce refuſe them. Some uſe Waſps, Hornets and Humble-bees, when their legs and wings are a very little grown forth, eſpecially for the Chub. The ſtinging of Hornets is cured by Venice-treacle taken inwardly, and applying outwardly Cow-dung and Faſting-ſpittle. Hornets breed out of the harder parts of Horſe-fleſh, as Waſps out of the ſofter. The ſting of Waſps is worſe than that of Bees, and is cured by application of Cow-dung mixed with Barley-meal, or Leaven mixt with Oyl and Vinegar. Underſtand, that

that it's the old Hornets and Waſps, *&c.* only that can ſting, which frequently happens when their Neſts are taken; but the young brood of them, which are for the Baits, are not capable to ſting.

Salmon Spawn

§ 21. Is a very good Bait for Chub, and in ſome Rivers for Trouts: Take the Spawn, and boil it ſo hard as to ſtick on the Hook, and then uſe it, or not boiled at all, is uſed by ſome. Others take the Spawn and put good ſtore of Salt to it, and hang the ſame in a Linnen bag, in the Kitchin, but far off the Fire, and it will be hard, and then they ſteep it, the Night before it is uſed, in Strong waters: Some expert Anglers preſerve Salmon Spawn, from pining, with Salt, or diſcolouring with moiſture, by laying it upon Wool, in a Pot, one layr of Spawn and another of Wool, to the filling of the Pot; and 'tis a lovely Bait for the Winter and Spring, eſpecially if uſed where Salmons uſe to ſpawn; for thither the Fiſh are gathered, and there expect it.

Minnow, Loach, and Bull-Head

§ 22. Are Baits for Pike, Pearch, Chub, Eel and great Trout. The Trout takes theſe Baits about a foot within the water, and ſometimes lower in the deeps, in the day time, in

March, *April* and *September*, when the wind is in the South, Weſt, or South-weſt, and bloweth ſtrongly, curling the waters, and raiſing high waves thereon. In Summer Months (that is, from the middle of *April*, until the end of *Auguſt*, according to the Computation of *Anglers*) he takes them not in the day time, unleſs the day be dark, and the wind high, and bluſtering; and then you muſt add ſome Lead to the Line, and ſink theſe Baits to the bottom; for the Trout will not take them at midwater, in a clear water, in Summer, in the day time; but in the night, at night Hooks, he'll take them from the beginning of *March*, until *Michaelmas*. Pike, Pearch, and Chub will take them either by day or night, only the Chub values them not ſo much in the day, as the night, in the four hot Months, viz. *May*, *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*. But both Pike, Pearch, Chub, Trout and Eel, take them exceeding well in the night, at night Hooks, from *March* the firſt, until after *Michaelmas*. Minnows of a middle ſize, and whitiſh, are the beſt. And though Minnows be good Baits, as aforeſaid, for Pike, Pearch, Chub, Trout and Eel, yet Experience aſſures me, that a ſmall Loach, or Bull-head, his guill fins being cut off, are better than Minnows by many degrees. When you Angle with Minnow, ſmall Loach or Bull-head, for Trout, be ſure that the Bait turn quick, and be always in motion and in a clear water; ſtick the Hook thorough the back fin

of

of a Minnow, or put the Hook into his upper lip, and keep him about mid-water, or a little lower, by the assistance of a Float; for Pearch. *Vid. cap.* 26.

Lamprey, Pride, or Seven-Eyes

§ 23. Are all one, and like unto small Eels, no thicker than a Straw, and may be found in sandy, muddy heaps, in Rivers near the side, almost as easily as worms in a dung-hill, and are good Baits either by night or day, for Chubs and Eels, and so are likewise the small brood of Eels for Chubs.

Snails.

§ 24. Both the white and black Snail, his Belly slit, that the white appear, are good Baits for the Chub, very early in the morning, but in the heat of the day he cares not for them. Trouts and Eels will likewise take them at the night Hook, in the night.

Grass-hopper and Cricket.

§ 25. Grass-hopper is a Creature, having no mouth, only a pipe in the Breast, by which it sucks in Dew, of which it lives. The Ancients (as is said) used to eat them. There are two, if not three sorts of them, not differing in shape, but colour; the one is green-coloured, the other dun, and a third yellowish

green on the body. They are principally found in green Meadows and Graſs; and Fiſh take them beſt in the latter end of *June*, all *July* and *Auguſt*: Cut off their legs and outward wings; the middle ſize are beſt. For Trout or Grayling, you may lead your Hook on the ſhank, with a ſlender plate of Lead, made narroweſt and ſlendereſt at the bent of the Hook, that the plate may come over it, then draw him over the Lead, after put a leſſer or a Cod bait on the point, and keep your Bait in continual motion, lifting it up, and ſinking again; pull off the Graſs-hoppers uppermoſt wings and legs. A Chub will likewiſe very well take this Bait.

Others, and very expert Anglers too, uſe, with good ſucceſs, only the tail, or half of the Graſs-hopper, putting on the Hook firſt, a young Beetle, or Sharn-bud, which is found in a Cow-turd of a day or two old, and they take off the higher hard wings, and then ſhe puts forth a long pair, coloured like thoſe of the Pad-fly: This in a cloſe water, and which breeds a large Trout, is as killing a Bait as any whatever; but 'tis not ſo good in a ſhallow, very clear and open River, by the Opinion of many. You may dib with a Graſs-hopper, either for Chub or Trout; the green Graſs-hopper is moſt uſed by ſome.

There is likewiſe a Houſe-cricket, which is a winged Inſect, like a Graſs-hopper, lives in Chimneys and warm places, and ſings almoſt con-

continually, and is ſaid by ſome to be a good Bait for Chubs, if you dib therewith, or permit it to ſink within the water.

Water-cricket, Water-lowſe, or Creeper

§ 26. Are all one, and are excellent good for a Trout, in *March* and *April*, or ſometimes in *May*,in ſome Rivers. They are found under Stones that lie hollow in the water;and you may fiſh with them within half a foot or a foot of the bottom; others let it drag on the ground; and others, and expert Anglers too, affirm, that if you dibble in the ſtreams, about noon, on a Sun-ſhiny day, and ſo for two or three hours therewith in the month of *April*, for Trouts, that 'tis a murthering Bait, 'tis always to be uſed in a clear water, and is not to be found in every River: It commonly is bred in very ſtony Rivers,and not in thoſe that calmly glide on Sand,and champaign Grounds. Theſe Creepers always turn into Stone-flies about *May*-day.

Lip-berries.

§ 27. Whoſe true name is *Aron-berries*, or Berries of *Cookow-pints*, or *Wake-Robin*: Theſe Berries proceed from the Herb *Aron*, and are ripe and fit for uſe in *July* and *Auguſt*, and are of a lovely, tranſparent Red, or Orange-colour: They are good Baits for Roch, and eſpecially Chub. Any Apothecary or Herb-woman

man will ſhew you the Herb in *May*, and do you look for the Berries or Fruit in *July* and *Auguſt*. You may put four or five on the Hook at a time for the Chub.

Cherries, Raſ-berries, Black-berries, and Mul-berries

§ 28. Are Baits for Chubs, and they will take them beſt in Ponds or Rivers, where ſuch Trees grow near the water, and ſuch Fruit cuſtomarily drop into them; ſometimes a Carp will take them.

Oat-cake, or Cheeſe

§ 29. Are good Baits to Angle with for Chub, Roch, Dace and Barbel, when you uſe a ledger Bait: Your Cheeſe may be kept a day or two (if it be not new, which it ought to be) in a wet linnen Cloth, or ſteeped a little in Hony.

To keep Baits for the Pike, or Night-Hooks.

§ 30. Carry Baits for the Pike, as ſmall Roch, Dace, Gudgeon, Bleak, Loach, Salmon Smelt, Minnow, Smelt (or as we call it in

in *Lancaſhire* Sparling or Spurlin) ſmall Trout, ſmall Pearch, (his back fins cut off) and ſmall Eels in Wheat-bran, which will dry up the ſlimy moiſture that is on them, and ſo keep them longer, and cauſe them ſtick more firmly on the Hook; beſides, there is a green watery ſubſtance or humour that iſſueth out of Fiſh, which will infect and rot them; but the Bran dryeth up the ſame, and preventeth that miſchief.

Oak-fly, Aſh-fly, or Woodcock-fly

§ 31. Is call'd by all theſe names, in different places, and is a very good Fly, from the beginning of *May*, until the end of *Auguſt*: It's a browniſh Fly, and found on the body of an Oak, or Aſh, and ſtands frequently with his head downwards, towards the root of the Tree; 'tis very proper for a Trout, and the beſt way to uſe it, is to put one on the Hook length ways, and ſometimes two (or, as you are directed, to bait the *May*-fly for dibbing, *cap.* 33.) and if you put it on length ways, put at the point of the Hook a Cod-bait, and let them ſink 6 inches, or a foot, into the water, and then raiſe it again gently, having a ſhort dibbing Line, and it's a deadly Bait for a Trout in a clear water; and ſometimes inſtead of a Cod-bait, uſe an Oak-worm, or green Grub, got off an Haw-thorn: Some dub it with black Wool, and *Iſabella* coloured Mohair, and bright browniſh Bears-hair, wrapt on

on with yellow Silk, but the head of an Aſh colour. Others dub it with an Orange, tawny and black ground: Others with blackiſh Wool and gold Twiſt about it. The wings muſt be the brown of a Mallards Feather, if you could but dub it aright, there would be no need of the natural one for a Trout.

Stone-fly and Green-drake.

§ 32. I ſhall ſay nothing of them here, becauſe I ſhall exactly deſcribe them when I come to Dub-fly Angling, *chap.* 35.

Hawthorn-fly

§ 33. Is a black Fly, to be found on every Hawthorn buſh, ſoon after the Leaves are come forth, and is a Fly to be uſed for dibbing in ſome Rivers for Trouts, *&c.*

Fiſh-eyes.

§ 34. Pull out the Eyes of thoſe Fiſh you catch, and put them on the Hook, and they are an excellent Bait for moſt ſorts of Fiſh; the like is ſaid of Fiſh-livers.

Frogs.

§ 35. The yellowiſh bright Frogs, that are found in *June* and *July*, in green Meadows, are

are good Baits for Chubs, Pikes and Pearches. Put your Hook through the skin of his Leg, towards the upper part of it. Uſe a ſmall Frog for Pearch and Chub. The French eat the hinder part of the green Frog: I believe none will rob them of the Dainty.

Great Moth

§ 36. Has a very great head, not unlike to an Owl, with whitiſh wings, and yellowiſh body: You may find them flying abroad in Summer Evenings, in Gardens, ſome wind ſtirring. This Fly the Chub delights in very much, and you are to dibble therewith.

Fat Bacon

§ 37. Is affirm'd by ſome to be a very good Bait for Chub and Pike, in the Winter months (that is, from the end of *Auguſt*, until the beginning of *April*, according to Anglers Computation) at Snap eſpecially.

The Earwig

§ 38. Is commended by ſome, to be a good Bait for Salmon Smelts. They are to be got by laying a white Linnen Cloth, or a Cows Hoof, in a Garden hedge, a night or two: Uſe them within the water, near bottom.

Black

Black Bee

§ 39. Is a great black Fly, that breeds in Clay walls, and is good for the Chub. Some cut off his Legs and upper Wings.

Fern-fly, or Fern-bud

§ 40. Is a thick, ſhort Fly, and is to be found on Fern, from about *May*-day, until the end of *Auguſt*, or later. This Fly hath a thick ſhort body, and two pair of wings, the uppermoſt are hard, and red on one ſide; but the undermoſt are tender, diaphanous and blackiſh: We often take off the uppermoſt wings, and dibble with this Fly. A Trout will take it about ten days together, in ſome part of *May*; but the Chub takes them all Summer.

Pith, or Marrow, in an Ox, Cow, Calf, or Sheeps Back-bone.

§ 41. Take out the white Pith of an Ox, Cow's, *&c.* Back-bone carefully; and be very tender in taking off the tough outward skin of thoſe in an Ox or Cow's Back-bone; but be ſure you leave the inward and tender white skin ſafe and untouched, or your labour is loſt. This is an excellent Bait for a Chevin all Winter long; and ſo is the Brains of an Ox or Cow,

Cow, either for Winter or Summer, and the Pith aforeſaid is a good Bait for Eels at Night Hooks.

A Rule about Baits.

§ 42. Fiſh take all ſorts of Baits moſt eagerly and freely, and with the leaſt ſuſpition or bogling, when you preſent the ſame unto them in ſuch order and manner as Nature affords them, or as they themſelves ordinarily gather them; and ſome are peculiar to certain Countries and Rivers, of which every Angler may in his own place make his proper obſervation; as ſome of the foregoing Baits will be taken in ſome particular Rivers, and not in others, and the ſame Baits are taken earlier in ſome Rivers than others, and ſooner or later in ſome Years than others, according to the quality and ſeaſon of the Year; although ground Baits in general are uſeful and certain almoſt in every River, yet ſo is not the Fly, which varies in colour, kind, ſhape, or proportion, almoſt in every River, nay, in the very ſame River, at five or ſix miles diſtance.

There may be perhaps many other Baits which the Author hath no knowledge of, but yet he will be bold to ſay, that theſe are the chief, and ſufficient for the experteſt Angler to underſtand. In the River *Thames* Anglers for Roch uſe a Periwinkle, which they gather in the *Thames* in Shells, they break the Shells and

and take the Periwinkle whole, (for if broken it's ſpoil'd) and that part which ſticks to the Shell they cut off from the Fiſh, and leave it ſticking to the Shell, and bait their Hooks with the other, (poſſibly a ſmall white Snail may ſerve in lieu thereof, it's like it) and this Periwinkle is much uſed about *London* Bridge for Roch.

§ 43. Shrimps taken out of the Shell are good Baits for Pike and Chub. The white Blite with much Seed, by ſome call'd All-ſeed, is a very acceptable Bait to Fiſh, ſay *Lovell* and *Coles* in their Herbals.

§ 44. Let all the Baits for the Pike be alive the ſame Morning you uſe them, for if they be ſtale, and not freſh and ſweet, he values them not. The very chief Baits for him are the large Gudgeon, Roch, ſmall Dace, Bleak, young Jack, a piece of an Eel, a large Minnow, Loach, in Hay-time a bright, yellow Frog, the Pearch, all his Fins cut off, may be uſed for want of others, but it's the very worſt Bait of any, for the Pike hath an Antipathy againſt him; a young Trout and Salmon Smelt are good Baits alſo.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of Paſtes.

THis Chapter treats only of Paſtes, which might have been comprehended under the general notion of Baits, yet ſince they are Artificial ones, and to be Angled with at Ground or within the Water, I judg'd it beſt to diſcourſe of them ſeparately in a Chapter by themſelves; and although there are, or may be, as many and diſtinct Paſtes as the luxuriancy of every Fancy will ſuggeſt, yet the ſubſequent are of beſt eſtimation.

Paſtes.

§ 1. Take Bean-flower, and if that be not to be got, then VVheat-flower, and the tendereſt part of the Leg of a young Rabbet, VVhelp or Catling, as much Virgins Wax and Sheep Suet; beat them in a Mortar till they be perfectly incorporated, then with a little clarified Hony temper them before the Fire into a Paſte; ſome omit the Bean and Wheat-flower, and others omit the Virgins Wax and Sheep Suet, only when they uſe it for Carps.

§ 2. With Crumbs of white Bread and Hony make, with clean Hands, a Paſte for Carp and Tench.

§ 3. Of the Crumbs of pure fine Manchet, and a little Water, make a Paſte, with clean Hands, for Roch and Dace.

§ 4. Beat Mutton Kidney Suet and ſoft new Cheeſe into a Paſte, for Barbel in *Auguſt*.

§ 5. Take the ſtrongeſt Cheeſe pounded in a Mortar, with a little Butter and Saffron, (ſo much of it as being beaten ſmall will turn it to a Lemon colour) and make a Paſte for Chubs in Winter.

§ 6. Take Sheeps Kidney Suet, as much Cheeſe, fine Flower or Manchet; make it into a Paſte, and allay its ſtiffneſs with clarified Hony.

§ 7. Take Sheeps Blood, Cheeſe, fine Manchet, clarified Hony; make all into a Paſte.

§ 8. Take Cherries, (the Stones being taken out) Sheeps Blood, fine Manchet, and Saffron to colour it with, and make a Paſte.

§ 9. Take the fatteſt old Cheeſe, and ſtrongeſt of the Rennet, Mutton Kidney Suet, Wheat-flower and Anniſeed Water, (and if for Chub add ſome reaſted Bacon;) beat all very ſmall into a Paſte.

§ 10. Take the fatteſt old Cheeſe, and ſtrongeſt of the Rennet, Mutton Kidney Suet, and Turmerick reduced into a fine Powder; work all into a Paſte, add the Turmerick only till the Paſte become of a very fine, lovely, yellow colour; this is excellent for Chevin.

§ 11. Take Flower made of fine Manchet,

and

and Butter, and Saffron to colour it, and make a Paſte for Roch and Dace.

Obſervations on Paſte.

§ 12. In *September* and all Winter Months, when you Angle for Chub, Carp, and Bream with Paſte, let the bait be as big as a large Hazle-nut; but for Roch and Dace, the bigneſs of an ordinary Bean is ſufficient.

§ 13. You may add to any Paſte *Aſſa-fœtida*, Oyl of Polypody of the Oak, Oyl of Ivy, Oyl of Petre, or the Gum the Ivy, and many other things, and try whether they will increaſe your Sport.

§ 14. Into all ſorts of Paſtes whatſoever, beat a little Cotton-wooll, ſhaved Lint, or fine Flax, which will make it ſtick well on the Hook, and not eaſily waſh off: And if you would have the Paſte keep long, put Virgins-wax, and clarified Hony into it.

§ 15. When you Angle with Paſte, or any ſmall tender bait, have a ſmall Hook, quick Eye, a nimble Hand, and Rod; and that ſomewhat ſtiff too, or both Bait and Fiſh are loſt; and, you muſt ſtrike at the very firſt time you perceive them bite or nibble. Paſtes are to be uſed in Pits, Ponds, Meares, or ſlow running Rivers only. Note, that this Rule is general, and holds in all very tender baits.

§ 16. When you Angle with Paſte, or any

very tender bait, uſe a Float of Quill, rather than of Corks; becauſe Corks will not ſo eaſily dip under Water, nor the bite ſo ſoon be perceived.

§ 17. Paſte is a very good bait for Chub, Roch, Dace, Barbel, Carp, Tench, Bream and Bleak.

CHAP. VI.

Ointments to Allure Fiſh to the Bait.

NExt follow Ointments and Receipts, which I have read and been informed of, by ſeveral knowing Anglers, and are practiſed for the better furtherance of this Sport; and ſome have ſuch confidence, that they affirm they'll not only allure, but even compel Fiſh to bite. Part of the following Receipts I have Experienced, and though I found them in ſome meaſure advantagious to my Recreation, yet far from ſo high a degree, as has been pretended to me: Nevertheleſs I ſhall preſent you with them; and if you'll be at the expence and labour of a Tryal, you may elect thoſe for your daily uſe, which on your own Experience you find to be the beſt: And the firſt ſhall be one highly commended by

by Monſieur *Charras*, (Operator and Apothecary Royal to the preſent French King, *Lewis* the Fourteenth) in his *Pharmacopœia*, printed at *London*, Part the Second, *f.* 245.

§ 1. Take Man's Fat and Cat's Fat, of each half an Ounce, Mummy finely powdred three Drams, Cummin-ſeed finely powdred one Dram, diſtill'd Oyl of Anniſe and Spike, of each ſix Drops, Civet two Grains, and Camphor four Grains, make an Ointment according to Art; and when you Angle anoint 8 inches of the Line next the Hook therewith, and keep it in a pewter Box, made ſomething taper: And when you uſe this Ointment, never Angle with leſs than 2 or 3 hairs next Hook, becauſe if you Angle with 1 Hair, it will not ſtick ſo well to the Line; but if you will mix ſome of this Oyntment, with a little *Venice* Turpentine, it will then ſtick very well to your Line; but clog not your Line with too much on at a time.

§ 2. Take Gum-Ivy, and put thereof a good quantity into a Box made of Oak, (ſuch as Apothecaries uſe of White-wood, and long for Pills) and chafe and rub the inſide of the Box with this Gum, and when you Angle put 3 or 4 Worms therein, letting them remain but a ſhort time, (for if long it kills them) and then take them out, and Fiſh with them, putting more in their ſtead, out of the Worm-bag and Moſs; and thus do all Day.

§ 3. Gum-Ivy is a tear which drops from

the Body of the larger Ivy, being wounded, and is of a yellowiſh red colour, of a ſtrong ſcent and ſharp taſt; that which is ſold in the Shops is Counterfeit and Adulterate, and generally no ſuch thing. Therefore to get Gum-Ivy, at *Michaelmas* or Spring, drive ſeveral great Nails into large Ivy ſtalks, and wriggle the ſame till they become very looſe, and let them remain, and a Gum will iſſue thereout. Slit in the Spring and at Michaelmas ſeveral great Ivy ſtalks, and viſit them once a Month, to ſee if Gum flow from the wounded part: This Gum is excellent for the Angler's uſe.

§ 4. Take *Aſſa-fœtida* half an Ounce, Camphor two Drams, bray them well together with ſome Drops of Oyl Olive, and put it in a pewter Box, and uſe it as the Firſt Receipt of this Chapter. Some inſtead of Oyl Olive, uſe the Chymical Oyl of Lavender and Camomil; and ſome add the quantity of a Nutmeg of *Venice* Turpentine to it. But that which I generally uſed for a Trout in a muddy Water, and for Gudgeons in a clear Water, is thus compounded; *viz.* ℞ *Aſſa-fœtida* three Drams, Camphor one Dram, Venice Turpentine one Dram; bray altogether with ſome Drops of the Chymical Oyl of Lavender, or for want thereof, with Oyl of Spike; and uſe it as the Firſt Receipt of this Chapter.

Camphor is a reſinous Gum, partly flowing of its own accord, but chiefly by inciſion, from

from a tall Tree growing in *India*; the *Bornean* Camphor is beſt: Chuſe the White, clear like Cryſtal; ſtrong ſcented will eaſily crumble between the Fingers, and is brittle, and being fired will ſcarcely be quenched. There is a Counterfeit or Factitious ſort, that put into a hot Loaf will parch, but the true will melt. It will keep many Years in Flax-ſeed, if it be not expoſed to the Air, otherwiſe it will evaporate and conſume to nothing.

Aſſa-fœtida grows in *Media*, *Libya*, *Syria*, and is a Gummy Juice of Laſer, Laſerpitium, or Sylphyon, gathered from the root or ſtalk cut: Chuſe that which is pure, fine, clammy, and ſmelling almoſt like Garlick; and not dry, or foul with ſticks, in colour like the beſt Myrrh; it will keep good many Years, but it is often Counterfeited or Adulterated, by mixing Meal, Bran and the Gum Sagapenum together.

§ 5. Take *Venice* Turpentine, and beſt Hivehony, and Oyl of Polypody of the Oak, drawn by Retort; mix all together, and uſe it as the firſt Receipt of this Chapter.

§ 6. Take Oyl of Ivy-berries, made by Expreſſion or Infuſion, and put ſome in a Box, and uſe it as is directed in the ſecond Receipt of this Chapter.

§ 7. Diſſolve Gum-Ivy in the Oyl of Spike, and anoint the Bait therewith. Mr. *Walton* preſcribes this for a Pike.

§ 8. Put Camphor into the Moſs, wherein are the Worms, the day you Angle.

§ 9. Diſſolve two Ounces of Gum-Ivy, in a Gill of Spring-water; then mix theſe together in the like quantity of the Oyl of ſweet Almonds, then take what quantity of Worms you intend to uſe that day (firſt well ſcoured in Moſs) and put them in linnen Thrums, firſt well waſhed in Spring-water, and ſqueezed; then wet the ſame Thrums in this Compoſition, and put the Thrums and Worms in a linnen Bag, and uſe them.

§ 10. Take *Aſſa fœtida* three Drams, Spikenard of *Spain* one Dram; put them in a pint of Spring-water, let them ſtand in a ſhady place fourteen days in the Ground; then take it out, and drain it through a linnen Cloth, and put to the Liquor one Dram of *Sperma cæti*, and keep it cloſe in a ſtrong Glaſs-bottle; and when you go to Angle, take what quantity of Worms you intend to uſe that day (the Worms being firſt well ſcoured in Moſs) and put them upon a pewter Saucer, and pour a little of this water upon them; then put them in the Moſs again, and uſe them.

§ 11. Take Juice of Camomil half a Spoonful, chymical Oyl of Spike one Dram, and Oyl of Comfrey by Infuſion one Dram and an half, Gooſe-greaſe two Drams; theſe, being well diſſolv'd over the Fire, let ſtand until cold, then put it a ſtrong Glaſs-bottle, which let be unſtopt three or four days, then ſtop it very

very well, and when you Angle, anoint the Bait therewith.

§ 12. Take a handful of Houſleek, half a handful of inner-green Bark of the Ivy ſtalk; pound theſe well together, and preſs the Juice thereout, and wet your Moſs therewith; and when you Angle, put ſix or eight Worms therein out of the other Bag, and when ſpent by fiſhing, do the like.

§ 13. Some uſe the Juice of Nettles and Houſleek, as the laſt Receipt, and ſome only the Juice of Houſleek.

§ 14. Some anoint their Bait with the Marrow got out of a Heron's Thigh-bone, and ſome uſe the Fat and Greaſe of a Heron.

§ 15. Take the Bones or Scull of a dead Man, at the opening of a Grave, and beat the ſame into powder, and put of this powder into the Moſs wherein you keep your Worms, but others like Grave-earth as well.

§. 16. ℞ Of Man's Fat, Cats Fat, Herons Fat, and of the beſt *Aſſa fœtida*, of each two Drams, Mummy finely powdred two Drams, Cummin-ſeed finely powdred two Scruples, and of Camphor, Galbanum and Venice Turpentine, of each one Dram, Civet-grains two; make, according to Art, all into an indifferent thin Oyntment, with the Chymical Oyls of Lavender, Anniſe and Cammomil, of each an equal quantity; and keep the ſame in a narrow-mouthed and well-glazed Gally pot, cloſe covered, with a Bladder and Leather; and when

when you go to Angle, take ſome of it in a ſmall pewter Box, made taper, and anoint 8 inches of the Line, next Hook, therewith, and when waſhed off, repeat the ſame.

This Ointment, which, for its excellency, I will call, *Unguentum Piſcatorum mirabile*, prodigiouſly cauſes Fiſh to bite, if in the hand of an Artiſt, that Angles within water, and in proper Seaſons and Times, and with ſuitable Tackle and Baits, fit and proper for the River, Seaſon, and Fiſh he deſigns to catch. The Man's Fat you may get of the *London* Chyrurgeons, concerned in Anatomy, and the Herons Fat from the Poulterers, in *London*; the reſt are to be had from Druggiſts, or Apothecaries. And this Compoſition will ſerve you two or three Summers Angling. I forbore (for ſome Reaſons) to inſert the ſame in my firſt Edition; but now, ſince it's divulged, value it not the leſs, but eſteem it as a Jewel. They that would try other Experiments, not before inſerted, and be curious, let them conſult a Book, call'd, *Modern Curioſities of Art and Nature*, pag. 178: But upon frequent Eſſays, this laſt hath the preheminence, and is found to excel them all.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

General Directions and Obſervations.

§ 1. LET the Anglers Apparel not be of a light ſhining or glittering colour, which will reflect upon the water, and affright away the Fiſh; but let it be of a ſad, dark colour, and cloſe to his Body; for Fiſh are affrighted with any the leaſt ſight or motion; therefore by all means, keep out of ſight, when you Angle in a clear water, either by ſheltering behind ſome Buſh or Tree, or by ſtanding as far off the Rivers ſide, you can poſſible; to effect this the better, a long Rod at Ground, and a long Rod and Line, at Artificial Fly, are abſolutely neceſſary: Neither ought you to jump on the Banks, next the water, you Angle in; for of all Creatures there are few more ſharp-ſighted, or fearful than Fiſh, eſpecially Trouts, Chubs and Carps

§ 2. When you Angle at Ground in a clear VVater, or dibble with natural Flies, Angle going up the River; but in a muddy VVater, or with Dub-fly, Angle going down the River.

§ 3. Before you ſet out to Angle ſee that your Baits be good, ſweet, fine, and agreeable to

to the River and Seaſon, and proper for the Fiſh you deſign to Angle for, and likewiſe your Tackle ſuitable and trim; for, if otherwiſe, you had better ſtay at home, becauſe you'll not only tire and weary your ſelf, but alſo loſe your labour, which, if a young Angler, will be no ſmall diſcouragement.

§ 4. Uſe Shoomakers Wax to the Thread or Silk with which you make or mend either Rod or Fly, or whip Hooks; for it holds more firmly, and ſticks better than any other.

§ 5. When you have hooked a great Fiſh, let him play and tire himſelf within the Water, and have an eſpecial care to keep the Rod bent, leſt he run to the end of the Line and break either Hook or hold, and hale him not too near the top of the Water, leſt by flaskering he break your Line.

§ 6. Angle for all ſort of Fiſh whatever in ſuch Rivers, and in that part of the River, where their haunts are deſcribed to be.

Fiſhes general Haunt

§ 7. Where any Weeds, Roots of Trees, Stones, Wood, or other Rubbiſh are, it's often good, but troubleſom Angling; for to ſuch places Fiſhes reſort for warmth and ſecurity, ſo likewiſe in Whirl-pools; for they are like Pits in Rivers, and are ſeldom unfurniſhed of good Fiſh; likewiſe at Weirs, Weir-pools, Mill-ſtreams, Piles, Poſts and Pillars of Bridges, Floud-gates, Cataracts

Cataracts and Falls of Waters, the Conflux of Rivers, the Eddies betwixt two Streams, the returns of a Stream, and the ſide of a Stream, are good places generally to Angle in; and in the Summer all Fiſh generally lie in the more ſhallow part of the River, or in a ſtrong, ſwift or gentle Stream, except Carp, Tench and Eel; in Winter, all fly into the deep, ſtill places. Where it ebbeth and floweth Fiſh ſometimes bite beſt, in the ebb moſt uſually, ſometimes when it floweth, rarely at full Water, unleſs near the Arches of Bridges, VVeirs, or Flood-Gates.

Rivers that are ſtreight and level are not ſo good to Fiſh in, as thoſe that are crooked, and have many corners and turnings, Pools and Pits; for Fiſh get into thoſe Creeks and Channels, and hide themſelves in their private apartments. If the Water be narrow you may Fiſh both ſides, and ſooner chop upon them; but where broad and deep their haunt is uncertain.

The beſt Rivers to Angle in, are not ſuch as run in a direct, ſtreight Line, but ſuch as have many Polygone windings and turnings, and almoſt *in plano* repreſent the Figure of a Regular Fortification with Baſtions, Flankers, Fauxbray, Retrenchments, *&c.* which are ſafe places to defend the Watery Inhabitants from the Aſſaults, and Attacks of violent Floods and Inundations: Neither are Rivers which are very broad, ſo convenient for this Paſtime, as

thoſe

thoſe which run in a more contracted and narrow compaſs.

§ 8. VVhen any Fiſh have taken the Hook from you, if it be not ſwallowed into their gorge, they will live; either the Water will cauſe it to ruſt, and in time wear away, or the Fiſh will go to the bottom, and there root, like a Hog, on the Gravel, till they either rub it out, or break the Hook in the middle.

How to feed Fiſh.

§ 9. Into ſuch places as you uſe to Angle, once a week at leaſt, caſt in all ſorts of Corn boyled ſoft, Ale-grains, or Wheat-bran ſteeped in Blood, Blood dryed and cut into pieces, Snails, Worms chopt into pieces, pieces of Fowl, or Beaſts Guts, Guts of Fowl or Pullen, Beaſt Livers cut into pieces, Oat-cake or Cheeſe chewed, ground Malt; eſpecially for Carp, Tench, Chub, Roch, Dace, Barbel and Bream, you cannot feed too often or too much: This courſe draweth the Fiſh to the place you deſire, and there keeps them together: Caſt in about 20 Grains of ground Malt, or Beans, now and then, as you Angle, or chewed Oat-cake or Cheeſe. Your Feed for Fiſh muſt always reſt in that very place, where you mean to Angle, and that your Bait may come to; therefore, by no means, when you Angle in a Stream, caſt them in at your Hook, but ſome-

thing

thing above where you Angle, leſt the Stream carry them beyond the Hook; and ſo inſtead of drawing them to you, you draw them beyond you. You may, between your hands, cloſe the Malt, or Ale-grains, ſo faſt, in handfuls, that the water will hardly part it with the fall. All ſorts of Baits are good to caſt in, eſpecially whilſt you are Angling with that Bait, principally Cod-baits, Gentles, Waſps and Paſte; and you'll find they will ſnap up yours more eagerly, and with leſs ſuſpicion.

§ 10. If you Angle at any place you have twice or thrice baited, and find no Sport, if none has been there before you, or no grand Impediment in the Seaſon or Water appear, be aſſured, Pike or Pearch (if they breed in that River) have there taken up their Quarters, and affright all other Fiſh thence, for fear of being made a Prey: Your only Remedy is preſently to Angle for them, with ſuitable Tackle and Baits; and when they are caught, the others will repoſſeſs themſelves of their former Station.

To know what Bait and Fly Fiſh take.

§ 11. The firſt Fiſh you catch, rip up his Belly, and you may then ſee his Stomach; it's known by its largeneſs and place, lying from the Guills to the ſmall Guts; take it out very tenderly (if you bruiſe it, your labour is loſt) and with a ſharp Penknife, cut it open, without bruiſing, and

and then you'll find his Food within it, and thereby diſcover what Bait at that very inſtant the Fiſh take beſt, whether Flies or Ground Baits, and ſo fit them accordingly; and if you have a good Microſcope, or magnifying Glaſs, you may (with ſome Pleaſure and Delight to you) eaſily diſcover the very true colour, proportion and ſhape of the Fly; and ſome can do it pretty well without a Glaſs.

§ 12. Keep the Sun (and Moon, if Night) before you, if your Eyes will indure it, at leaſt, be ſure to have thoſe Planets on your ſide; for if they be on your Back, both your ſelf and Rod, will, with its ſhadow, offend much, and the Fiſh ſee farther and clearer, when they look towards thoſe Lights, than the contrary; as you may experiment thus: In a dark Night, if a Man come between you and any Light, you ſee him clearly, but not at all, if the Light come betwixt you and him.

§ 13. All Fiſh whatever, that ſwim in clear Rivers, are wholſomer, pleaſanter, and far better taſted than thoſe of the ſame kind, that live in Pits, Ponds, Mears, and ſtanding Waters.

§ 14. A Hog back and a little head, either to Trout, Salmon, or any other Fiſh, are a Sign they are in Seaſon. All ſorts of Fiſh that have Scales on their Bodies, conſtantly ſwim together, in Troops and Companies, as the Roch, Dace, Chub, Gudgeon, &c. The Females of moſt Fiſh are larger than the Males.

§ 15. Let

§ 15. Let all Baits and Flies whatſoever, fall gently firſt into the water, before any other part of the Line, and with as little of the Line as poſſible, and without any diſturbance, plunging, or circling of the water, which mightily ſcares and affrightens Fiſh.

§ 16. Some Fiſh are ſaid to be Leather-mouthed, that is, their Mouths are ſo tough, that if they be once hooked, they ſeldom break the hold; ſuch are the Chub, Barbel, Carp, Tench, Roch and Gudgeon; but the Pike, Salmon, Pearch, Eel, Grayling, Trout and Bream, are very tender mouthed, and their hold often breaks after hooked.

§ 17. Roch and Dace, or Dare, recover ſtrength, and grow in ſeaſon within a Fortnight after ſpawning; Barbel and Chub within a Month; Trout, in four Months, and the Salmon in like time, if he get into the Sea, and after into freſh water.

§ 18. Angle always, if you can, on the Lee-ſhore; and note, that Fiſh lie or ſwim nearer the bottom, and in deeper water in Winter, than in Summer; and alſo near the bottom in any cold Day, and then gets near the calm ſide of the water, and in the Winter are caught beſt at the mid-time of the Day, and in Sun-ſhiny weather.

§ 19. When you put any living Bait on the Hook, torment or bruiſe the ſame as little as poſſible, that they may live long on the Hook, after baited.

§ 20. Let him that would be a compleat Angler, ſpend ſome time in Angling in all ſorts of Waters, Ponds, Rivers, ſwift and ſlow, ſtony, pebly, gravelly, ſandy, muddy, chalky, and ſlimy; and obſerve the differences in the Nature of the Soils and Ground on which they run or ſtand; and likewiſe the Nature and Humour of each particular Fiſh, Water and Bait, by which he'll become a perfect and judicious Artiſt, and be able to take Fiſh wherever he Angleth, and will find much difference between ſwift, ſlow, and ſtanding Waters.

Likewiſe let the Angler obſerve when he takes ſtore of Fiſh, the Age of the Moon, the Temperature of the preceding Night, and the darkneſs, brightneſs or windineſs of it; ſeaſon and nature of the Morning and Day, together with the Temperature of the Air, Water and Wind, and all other precedent, concomitant, natural or adventitious Advantages, that could any ways conduce to his Sport, and likewiſe on the contrary all things he finds to be Obſtacles and Obſtructors of his paſtime, and enter them methodically in a Book, with the day of the Month, *&c.* Hereby, with a little practice, he'll be able to raiſe Concluſions for the improvement of this Art.

§ 21. In all ſort of Angling, be ſure to keep out of Fiſhes ſight, and as far off the Rivers back as poſſible, unleſs you Angle in a muddy water, and then you may approach near the water.

§ 22. Se-

§ 22. Several Countries alter the time, and almoſt the manner of Fiſhes breeding, but doubtleſs of their being in ſeaſon, as in the River *Wye*, in *Monmouth-ſhire*, Salmon are in ſeaſon from *September* to *April*; but in the *Thames*, *Trent*, and moſt other Rivers, they are in ſeaſon almoſt all the ſix hot Months.

§ 23. Gather or get all ſorts of Materials, to make Angle-rods on, as the Hazle, Blackthorn and Yew Switches, *&c.* at the Winter Solſtice, or, at leaſt, between the laſt day of *November*, and the 20 day of *December*; becauſe all ſort of Wood then is moſt tough and freeſt from Sap; it not aſcending with that vigour into the Ball and Branches, by reaſon of the coldneſs of the Weather, and the Suns ſmall ſtay on our Horizon, which renders its influence feeble.

§ 24. Trouts, Salmons, Pikes, Pearches and Eels have large Mouths, and their Teeth therein, but moſt other Fiſh have their Teeth in their Throat.

§ 25. When you Angle for Pearch, Chub, Tench, Carp, Dace, Bream, Gudgeon and Ruff, and have hooked one who after makes his eſcape, you'll not often have any great Sport at that ſtanding for one or two hours ſpace next after ſuch misfortune, becauſe he's ſo affrighted, that he chaſes his fellows out of that place; therefore after ſome trial, you muſt remove your ſelf, and Angle at ſome other Standing.

§ 26. Whoſoever deſires to know all the abſtruſe Notions and Properties of Fiſh, let them diligently peruſe and read the following Authors; viz. *Geſner, Rondeletius, Oribatius, lib. 7. cap. 22.* Monſieur *Muffetus, Janus Dubravius, Aldrovandus, Franciſcus Bonſuetus, Paulus Jovius, cap. 34. Pliny's Natural Hiſtory, Bellonius, Hyppolitus Salvianus, Ariſtotle*, &c.

§ 27. All Fiſh are of a cold and moiſt Temperature, but ſome exceed others in goodneſs, according to the Nature of the Water, and places wherein they live. Fiſh live either in the ſalt Water or Sea, or in freſh Waters, as Rivers, Brooks, Lakes, Mears, Pools, Ponds or Pits. The Sea-fiſh is accounted beſt, is more ſavoury, and nouriſhes better, by being of a firmer ſubſtance, hotter and drier, and not ſo viſcous, clammy and ſlimy, as the freſh Water Fiſh. Of Sea Fiſh, thoſe that have Scales and firm Subſtances are beſt, and ſuch as are incloſed in Shells, as Oyſters, Lobſters, Crabs, *&c.* afford a good and ſolid nouriſhment; but thoſe of a ſofter, ſlimier or cartilagineous Subſtance, are not ſo good. Fiſh that live in pure Water toſſed to and fro with Waves, are better than thoſe that live in calm and muddy Waters, that are little agitated, and thoſe that live near ſandy, rocky Shores, are better than where there is much Slime and Mud; ſo ſuch freſh Water Fiſh which live moſt commonly in clear, rocky, ſtony, pebly, gravelly or ſandy Rivers, and which are of a ſwift courſe, far exceed

ceed in goodneſs, and yield a purer and better nouriſhment, than thoſe that live in ſlimy, muddy or ſtanding Waters, or very ſoftly gliding Rivers, whoſe courſe is ſo ſlow as is ſcarce diſcernable. Fiſh are generally the fatteſt, though not the ſweeteſt, that are fed in muddy, weedy Rivers.

§ 28. Trouts, Salmon Smelts, Pearches, Ruffs and Gudgeons, are allowed in ſome Diſtempers by Phyſicians, for their ſick Patients to eat.

§ 29. When you Angle for any ſort of Fiſh, be ſure the ſame Fiſh is in ſeaſon, elſe your Labour is ill loſt; for Fiſh out of ſeaſon are the worſt ſort of Meats.

§ 30. A great Fiſh bites more calmly and moderately than a ſmall one; for they ſnatch and run away with the Bait, without any care or deliberation: So an old Fiſh that hath been prickt in the Guills or Guts, is very cautious in making a ſecond Adventure.

§ 31. There are many Circumſtances that conduce much to the feeding of Pike, Pearch, Chub, Carp, Roch, Dace and Bream; as conveniency of harbour; for they that lie among Weeds and foggy places, prove the fatteſt, though not always the ſweeteſt: They are there ſecure from the Aſſaults and Diſturbance of Enemies, and enjoy a more ſafe and contented Repoſe: Reſt and Quietneſs being as natural and helpful to their feeding as to other Creatures. Again, ſome Waters may be more

feeding and nouriſhing than others: A thicker ſort of Water, if it be not foul and muddy, is of a better conſiſtency, and the parts better diſpoſed and qualified for Nutrition, than thoſe of a more thin and rarified Subſtance: No Element that is pure and without mixture, is conſentaneous for nouriſhing: Neither can Fiſh live by pure Water, Reſpiration, or ſucking, in thoſe ſlender Particles of his beloved Element only, without the concurrence and aſſiſtance of ſome groſſer and terrene Qualities, which are intermingled with thoſe liquid Bodies.

§ 32. In the Pool *Limpers*, in *Carnarvanſhire*, there is a kind of Fiſh, peculiar to that Water, and ſeen no where elſe, call'd by the Inhabitants there, *Tor-coch*, of the Belly that is ſomewhat red. So in *Winander-mere* in *Lancaſhire*, there is a Fiſh call'd, a *Charr*, peculiar to that *Mere* only; 'tis about length and bigneſs of a large Trout, and ſomething reſembles a Trout in its ſhape.

§ 33. In the Eaſt part of *Merionethſhire*, the River *Dee*, ſpringeth out of two Fountains, and forthwith paſſeth through *Pimble* or *Plenlin-mere*, call'd in the Map, *Lyn-tegit*, a Lake ſpreading far in length and breadth, and ſo runneth out of it with as great a ſtream as it entreth in, and you ſhall never ſee in the *Dee* Fiſhes, call'd a *Gwinniad*, which are peculiar to the *Mere*, nor yet Salmons in the *Mere*, which nevertheleſs are commonly taken in the River.

§ 34. About *Formby*, in *Lancaſhire*, when the People

People get Turffs, there is a certain black Water under the Turffs, where ſwim little Fiſhes that are caught by the Diggers; and in other parts of *Lancaſhire*, under the Turffs, are often caught Eels; ſo that Fiſhes here are digged out of the Earth, as well as about *Heraclea* and *Tios*, in *Pontus*, and in *Paphlagonia*, many and thoſe good Fiſhes are gotten by digging in places nothing watery.

§ 35. Near unto the *Abbey* of St. *Maurice*, in *Burgundy*, there is a Fiſh-pond, in which are Fiſhes put according to the number of Monks of that place; and if any one of them happen to be ſick, there is a Fiſh ſeen alſo to float and ſwim above the Water half dead; and if the Monk ſhall die, the ſaid Fiſh a few days before dieth. *Leonardus Varius* reports this on the Teſtimony of Cardinal *Granvell*. So at *Brereton* in *Cheſhire*, before any Heir of the Houſe of *Brereton* dieth, there are ſeen in a Pool adjoyning, call'd *Bag-mere*, Bodies of Trees ſwimming for certain days together, and after to ſink until the next like occaſion.

§ 36. Our *Britiſh* Sea breeds and affords variety, and almoſt innumerable Fiſhes, as Salmons (which *Bede* calls *Iſicios*, as *Pliny*, *Eſox*) Plaice, Flounders, Flooks, Shads, which, pickled like Anchovis, equal the beſt Anchovis, Pungers, Cods, Haddocks, Hollyburt, Whitings, Herrings, Pilchards, Soles, Maccarel, Mullets, Turbuts, Seals, or Sea-veals, or Sea-calves, Rochets, Maids, Ray-fiſh, Scate, Thornback,

back, Oyſters, Lobſters, Crab-fiſh, Muſles, Cockles, Perls, Sprats, Spurlings, which, pickled like Anchovis, or Turners-way, exceed them in goodneſs, and very much ſtrengthen the Stomach, Congers, Lampreys, Yards, Periwinckles, *&c.* with an infinite number of others, whereof it maintaineth and feedeth innumerable Sculls and Beds; but theſe being beyond our Province, the freſh Water, are not to be diſcourſed of here; only let me tell you what Mr. *Cambden* ſaith, That near unto *Hunt-cliff*, in the North-riding of *Yorkſhire*, not far from the ſhore, there appear at Low-water, certain Rocks, about which the Fiſhes, we call Seals, *quaſi*, Sea-veals, meet together in Troops, to ſleep and ſun themſelves, and upon that Rock, which is next unto the ſhore, there lieth one, as it were, to keep Centinel, and as any Man approacheth near, he either by throwing down a big Stone, or by tumbling himſelf into the Water with a great noiſe, giveth a Signal unto the reſt to look to themſelves, and get into the Water. Moſt afraid they be of Men, againſt whom, when they chace them, they being deſtitute of Water, fling backward with their hinder Feet, a Cloud, as it were, of Sand and Gravel Stones, yea, and oftentimes drive them away: For Women they care not ſo much; therefore thoſe that take them uſe to be clad in Womens Apparel.

§ 37. In *Bone* Well, a Spring not far from *Richard's* Caſtle, in *Herefordſhire*, are continually

ally found little Fiſhes Bones, but no Fiſh to be ſeen; and being wholly cleanſed thereof, will notwithſtanding have the like again; whether they be naturally produced, or in Veins thither brought, is unknown.

CHAP. VIII.

Seaſons generally improper for Angling.

§ 1. IN great Droughts, when the Rivers are ſmall, or in the heat of the Day, in *May*, *June*, *July*, *Auguſt*, and beginning of *September*, although there be no Drought (except cooled by Wind or ſhadowed by Clouds) you'll find ſmall Sport, eſpecially in marly, chalky, ſlimy, or very ſhallow and clear Waters and Rivers.

§ 2. In cold, froſty, or ſnowy Weather, or where ſtore of Snow-broth is in the River, it's to little purpoſe to Angle; when there happeneth in the Summer, or Spring eſpecially, any ſmall hoary Froſt, all that day after the Fiſh will not riſe kindly and freely, except in the Evening, and that prove pleaſant.

§ 3. If

§ 3. If the Wind either be Eaſterly, or ſo high that you cannot guide your Tools, it's to little purpoſe to Angle; for there is a ſecret malignity in the Eaſt-wind, that generally abates Fiſhes appetite and deſire of Baits.

§ 4. Sharp, bitter, nipping Winds blowing from the North, but the Eaſt eſpecially, blaſt the Recreation.

§ 5. After any ſort of Fiſh have ſpawned, they'll not bite to any purpoſe, until they have recover'd their ſtrength and former appetite.

§ 6. When any Clouds ariſe, that will certainly bring a Shower or Storm (though in the midſt of Summer) they will not bite; and if they bite well before, yet at the approach thereof, they will ceaſe biting.

§ 7. VVhen the Nights prove dark, cloudy or windy, and that the Moon ſhines little, or not at all, next day there will be little or no Sport, except at ſmall ones; for Trouts and great Fiſh then range about to devour others, and ſeek Food; ſo that when the Nights are dark or windy, the next day rarely proves ſucceſsful to the Angler, for great Fiſh, eſpecially Trouts.

§ 8. In ſmall, clear and ſhallow Brooks, where the Mills ſtand and keep up the Water, you will neither catch Fiſh at Ground or Fly at that time: For Fiſh, eſpecially Trouts, then dare not come out of their hold, by reaſon of the ſhallowneſs of the Water, and that the Water then brings no Food or Aliment with it.

§ 9. When

§ 9. When People waſh their Sheep in Summer, at the firſt time only Fiſh bite well; becauſe the Filth draweth them together as to a baiting place; but after they have glutted themſelves four or five days, they will not bite again till waſhing time be over.

§ 10. Thunder and Lightening are very offenſive, and ſpoil the Anglers Sport.

CHAP. IX.

Seaſons generally proper for Angling.

§ 1. THE beſt Hours in general Eſteem, to Angle in a clear Day and VVater, from about the tenth of *April*, until the end of *Auguſt*, is from Sun-riſe, until half an hour after ten a Clock, and from half an hour after two a Clock, until Sun-ſet; ſo that you may reſt your ſelf in the heat and middle of the day; but if the day be dark, cloudy, gloomy or lowring, eſpecially if at ſuch a time alſo a gentle Breeze, or gale of Wind blow from any quarter but the Eaſt, or be not Eaſterly, you'l never fail of catching Fiſh in any hour of the day that is dark, cloudy, gloomy, lowring and windy, as aforeſaid, but in *March*, begin-

ning

ning of *April*, *September*, and all Winter Months, you may Angle all the day, from about one hour after Sun-riſe, until about half an hour before Sun-ſet, either in a muddy or clear Water. And you may Angle all the day from the riſing until the ſetting of the Sun, in a muddy Water, from the middle of *April*, until the end of *Auguſt*, but early in the Morning, and late in the Evening, are beſt in *May*, *June*, *July* and *Auguſt*.

§ 2. If the day be dark, cloſe, gloomy or lowring, and have a gentle whiſtling Wind playing on the Water, or a fine miſling Dew of Rain falls gently without violence, at ſuch a time Fiſh will bite: So when Trouts leap out of the Water, and Pikes ſhoot in purſuit of other Fiſhes, they will bite well, if you Angle with Tackle and Baits proper for the Seaſon and Fiſh.

§ 3. Calm, clear, (or which is far better) cool, gloomy, dark, cloudy VVeather, in the Summer Months (that is, from mid *April*, until the end of *Auguſt*) the VVind blowing gently, ſo as you may guide your Tools with eaſe, in the hotteſt Months the cooler the better; at ſuch times Fiſh bite well.

§ 4. VVhen a ſudden, violent Shower hath a little mudded and raiſed the Water, then if you go forth immediately after ſuch a Shower, and Angle at Ground in the ſtream or ſides thereof with Brandling, Gilt tail, Tag-tail, or chiefly red VVorm well ſcoured, if there be

ſtore

ſtore of Fiſh, you'll have Sport to your own ſatisfaction.

§ 5. VVhen Floods have carried away all the Filth that the Rain had waſhed from the higher Grounds into the River, and that the River keepeth his uſual bounds, and is of a Whey, Cheſtnut Brown, or Ale colour, then it's good to Angle at Ground.

§ 6. After Floods are gone away, and Rivers come within their own natural Bounds and Banks, their firſt clearneſs recovered, and the Water pure, then it's good to Angle.

§ 7. A little before any Fiſh ſpawn, they come into the gravelly, ſandy Fords, to rub and looſen their Bellies, and then and there they bite well.

§ 8. VVhen Rivers are raiſed by Rain, and yet within their Banks, Fiſh ſeek ſhelter and eaſe in little and milder Currents of ſmall Brooks that fall into larger Rivers, and at the ſides or ends of Bridges, that defend a ſmall ſpace of Ground from the impetuouſneſs of the Stream, or in any low place near the River ſide, Fiſh reſt and ſecure themſelves from the rapid Stream; in ſuch a place not too deep, you'll find Sport.

§ 9. At the conflux of Rivers, and where it ebbeth and floweth, Fiſh ſometimes bite very well, in the ebb moſt uſually, ſometimes when it floweth, rarely at full Water.

§ 10. In *February*, *March*, beginning of *April*, *September*, and all Winter Months, Fiſh bite beſt in

in the Sun-ſhine, warmth, and middle part of the day, no Wind ſtirring, the Air clear; but in the Summer Months, that is, from the tenth of *April*, unto the end of *Auguſt*, early in the Mornings and in the Evenings, until Sun-ſet (or after the Suns ſetting, from mid *May*, until the end of *July*) and dark, windy, gloomy, lowring, cool or cloudy Weather, is beſt to Angle in: And if you can guide your Tools, and find ſhelter, no matter how high the Winds be, ſo they be not Eaſterly.

§ 11. Fiſh riſe beſt at the Fly after a Shower that hath not mudded the Water, yet hath beaten the Gnats and Flies into the River, you may, in ſuch a Shower, obſerve them to riſe much, if you can but endure the Rain.

The beſt Months for Fly, are *March*, *April* and *May*: In cooler Months, Angle in the warmth of the day; in warm Weather about nine in the Morning, and three a Clock in the Afternoon, are the very chief times to Angle in, if any gentle gale blow, and often in a warm Evening, eſpecially if the Gnat play much: And likewiſe Fiſh riſe well when the Weather is calm, cloudy, dark and gloomy, or gloomy, dark, and a little windy.

§ 12. In calm, clear, and Star-light Nights (eſpecially if the Moon ſhine) great Fiſh, Trouts eſpecially, are as wary and fearful, as in dark, cloudy, gloomy and windy days, and ſtir not, but if the next day prove dark, cloudy, gloomy

gloomy and windy, and the Water in order, you may be ſure of Sport, if there be ſtore of Fiſh in the River: For having abſtained from Food all night, they are more hungry and eager, and the darkneſs and windineſs of the day, makes them more bold to bite.

§ 13. In ſmall, clear Brooks, if you come in, or immediately after a Shower that hath raiſed the Water; or take it juſt as any Mill Water begins to come down, and ſo go along with the courſe of the Water, Fiſh, eſpecially Trouts, will then bite well; for then they come forth to ſeek Food, which they expect the Water to bring down.

§ 14. In *May* eſpecially, and generally all Summer, if the Morning prove extream cold, as ſometimes it doth (although there be no Froſt) Fiſh bite not to any purpoſe, until the day become warmer; and if it prove cold all the day long, they bite beſt where the Sun ſhines, but not at all in the ſhady parts of the River.

§ 15. If the day be dark, cloudy and gloomy, in the Summer, no matter how high the Winds be, ſo they be not Eaſterly, and you be able to manage your Tools.

§ 16. After the River is cleared from a Flood, Fiſh riſe very well; being glutted with Ground-baits, they then covet and deſire the Fly, having wanted it a time.

§ 17. Morning and Evening are beſt for Ground-line, for a Trout, or other Fiſh, in clear

clear Weather and Water; but in dark, gloomy, cloudy Weather, or muddy VVater, you may Angle at Ground all day.

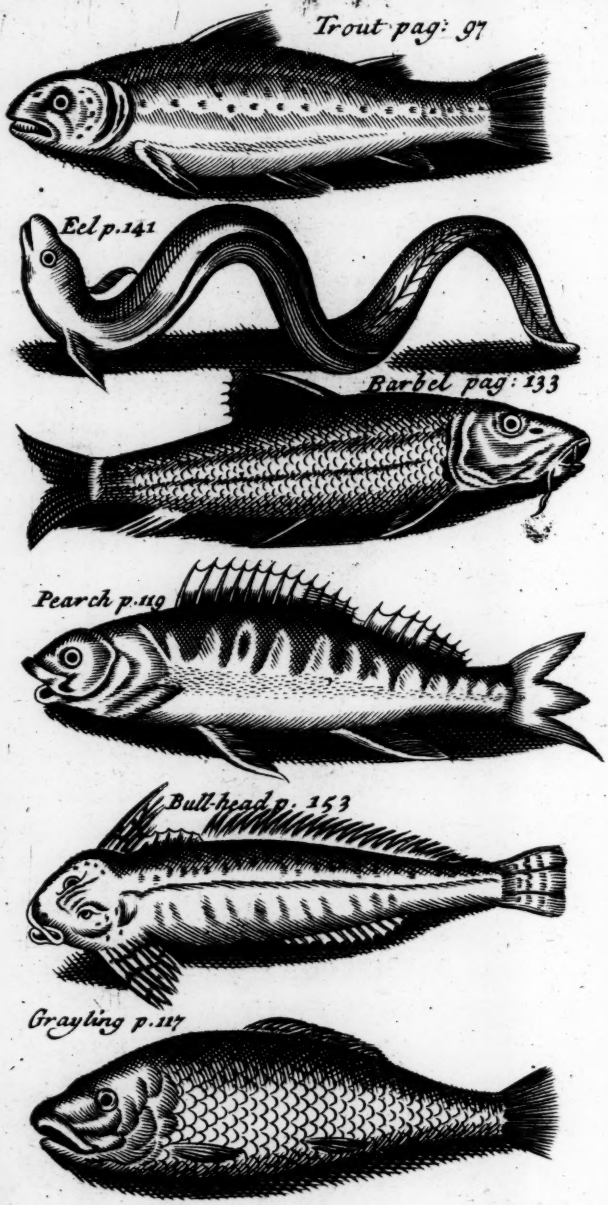
§ 18. Great Fiſh, as Trouts, *&c.* feed moſt in the night, eſpecially if it be dark or windy, and then bite not next day, unleſs dark or windy it prove, and then a little in the Afternoon only.

§ 19. The Wind blowing from the South or VVeſt, is good to Angle in, the North-wind is but indifferent, and the Eaſt-wind very bad.

§ 20. All Fiſh bite keener and better, eſpecially in Summer, in ſwift, rapid, ſtony, pebly, gravelly Rivers, than in thoſe that run gently, and glide on Slime and Mud.

§ 21. Some may expect me to inſert the Elective Times moſt propitious to Anglers, according to the Rules of Judicial Aſtrologers, but they muſt pardon me herein, ſince I am ſufficiently convinced of the Vanity thereof; and it would rather be an Unkindneſs, than Favour, by puzzling our Angler with their ridiculous Notions, as unſerviceable to him, as falſe in their Foundations. But let our Ingenious Angler elect a cloudy, gloomy or windy Day, and the VVind not Eaſterly, but either Southerly or VVeſterly; and uſe proper and neat Tackle, and ſuitable Baits for the River, Seaſon, and Fiſh he deſigns to catch, and then I doubt not, but he'll conclude with me, that, *Sapiens dominabitur Aſtris.*

CHAP.


Trout pag: 97
Eel p.141
Barbel pag: 133
Pearch p.119
Bull-head p. 153
Grayling p.117

CHAP. X.

Obſervations on the Trout.

MY next Diſcourſe ſhall be of the ſeveral ſorts of freſh Water Fiſh, wherein I ſhall only tell you of little more than their Haunts, (which is the place proper to Angle in for them) their particular times of biting, ſeaſon, ſpawning and Baits, omitting much that might be ſaid of each Fiſh, becauſe this is intended to be a Summary of the Anglers Art, and more for Practice than Theory; and for that the Trout is the moſt excellent Fiſh, by the vogue of the moſt curious Palates, my firſt Diſcourſe ſhall be of him.

His Haunt.

§ 1. A Trout loveth ſmall purling Rivers and Brooks, that are very ſwift, cryſtal and clear, running on Stones, Pebbles or Gravel; he feeds whilſt ſtrong, in the ſwifteſt Streams, and more uſually in the ſide of the Stream than in it, ſometimes in the deepeſt part of it, (eſpecially if he be a large one) and near the Banks, or behind a Stone, Block, or ſome Bank that ſhoots forth with a point into the River, upon which the Stream beareth much,

and cauſeth a whirling of the Water back by the Banks ſide, much like the Eddy of the Tide: And he the more willingly maketh choice of this place, if there be a ſhade over his head, as a Buſh, Foam, or hollow, hanging Bank, under which he can ſhelter himſelf; or behind a Stone, Log, or ſome ſmall Bank, that ſhoots into the River, which the Stream beareth upon, where he'll lie watching for what cometh down the Stream, and ſuddenly catcheth it up; ſometimes in the Eddies betwixt two Streams, and in the Returns of a Stream he lies. His hold is uſually in the deep, under a hollow place of the Bank, root of a Tree, or Stone, which he loveth exceedingly; and ſometimes, but not often, he's found in Weeds. In the Spring, and latter end of Summer, he'll ply at the tail of a Stream, but in mid *May*, at the upper end; (and ſo do moſt Fiſh:) If his hold be near, he'll ſtay long in a place. As the Weather in Spring grows warmer, ſo he grows ſtronger, and departs from the deep, or dead ſtill Waters, into the ſharp Streams and Gravel; yet the beſt Trouts often in Summer, in exceſſive Droughts, are driven out of the ſmall and ſhallow Streams, and retire into the plain Deeps, where you may catch them with dibbing, or on a dark, gloomy, cloudy and windy day, that furls the Water, with the Caſt-fly. There are ſeldom any ſtore of Trouts in Rivers that ſoftly glide through plain, level and champaign Grounds; for they gene-

rally

rally live nearer the ſource, or Spring-head of Rivers.

§ 2. If there be great ſtore of Chubs in the River, you ſhall only catch Trouts in the Streams, in *March*, *April*, beginning of *May* and *September*, becauſe in the four hot Months Chubs come into the Streams, and then drive out moſt of the Trouts, by the Opinion of very good Anglers.

Spawning time, ſeaſon, &c. of Trouts.

§ 3. Trouts, contrary to moſt Fiſh, ſpawn about *Martinmas*, in ſome Rivers a little earlier or later, but moſt other Fiſh ſpawn in the Spring or Summer; he's in ſeaſon from the beginning of *March* until *Michaelmas*, but his very chief ſeaſon is the end of *May*. The Female hath a leſs Head, deeper Body, and is uſually better Meat than the Male; the beſt are uſually red or yellow, and ſome white, yet good, but thoſe rarely found; ſome Soils nouriſh them better than others, for in the ſame River you ſhall in one Field catch one lank, lean, and with a great head, and in the next Field one full, thick, luſty, red, fat, and with a ſmall head; they die quickly after taken, but the Eel, Carp, and Tench, live long out of their proper Element; they and Salmons will miraculouſly paſs thorough and over Weirs, Floodgates, ſmall Cataracts and Fiſh-Garths. They are a greedy, devouring, and ravenous Fiſh;

and in their ſeaſon nimble, quick, an ſtrived long and vigorouſly for their Lives, and will run among Roots, Weeds, or any thing to entangle the Line, or break it, and when ſtruck will endeavour to run to the end of the Line, they like a large Bait at ground, and his ground Bait muſt drag on the ground; Flies they take moſt at top of the Water, or ſometimes within 2 or 3 inches of it: with Minnow or Loach he's caught within a foot of the ſurface of the Water, and ſometimes lower by Trowling. They are of a ſudden growth, yet no long-lived Fiſh; at full growth they decline in Body, and grow in the head until Death. Some Rivers breed very large, thick and good Trouts, others generally ſmall ones, not above 9 or 10 inches in length, but very numerous. Trouts in ſeaſon have their Bodies adorned with red ſpots, but the Salmon with black or blackiſh ſpots, and indeed ſome eſteem the Salmon (and that not irrationally) to be no other Fiſh than a Sea Trout; becauſe of their ſmall difference in ſhape, nature, and qualities from Trouts, that live continually in the freſh Streams and VVaters.

On the very top of *Cadier Arthur* Hill in *Brecknockſhire*, there walmeth forth a Spring of VVater, and this Fountain in manner of a VVell is deep, but fourſquare, having no Brook or Riveret iſſuing from it, yet are there Trouts found therein.

At *Foredidge* in *Kent*, are Trouts of a Five-fold Remark,

Remark, 1. They equall Salmons in bigneſs. 2. In their beſt ſeaſon they cut white, and not red or yellow, as moſt Trouts do. 3. They remain nine Months in the Sea, and three Months in the Freſh VVater, and obſerve their coming into the Freſh VVater almoſt to a Day. 4. Contrary to moſt Trouts, they have been obſerved to be but once caught with an Angle. 5. They eat nothing in the Freſh VVater, but are thereby only ſuſtain'd, as thoſe that have diſſected them do think.

In *Northumberland*, there is a Trout call'd a Bull-Trout, greater and bigger than any in the Southern parts, and there are in many Rivers relating to the Sea, Salmon Trouts, as much different from others in ſhape and ſpots, as Sheep in ſome Countries differ one from another in their ſhape and bigneſs; in the River *Kennet* near *Hungerford* in *Barkſhire*, there is great plenty of Trouts ſignally large and good, alſo the *Stower* in *Kent*, which runs through *Canterbury*, is ſaid to breed the beſt Trouts in the South Eaſt of *England*, and thoſe in *Wandle* near *Caſhalton* in *Surrey*, and *Amerly* in *Suſſex*, and in *Dove*, *Wye*, *Lathkin*, and *Bradford* in *Derbyſhire*, *Ribbell*, and *Irk* in *Lancaſhire*, and in *Uſk*, and *Wye*, in *Monmouthſhire*, are accounted excellent Trouts.

Mr. *Walton* ſays, that *Hampſhire* exceeds all *England*, for ſwift, ſhallow, clear, pleaſant Brooks and ſtore of Trouts; the ſame opinion Mr. *Cotton* hath of *Derbyſhire*, eſpecially of the

Rivers *Dove*, and *Wye*, and the Brooks *Lathkin*, and *Bradford*, which Rivers and Brooks, he ſays, breed the reddeſt, beſt, and moſt admirable Trouts in *England*.

But to ſpeak impartially, I think none can truly determine, in what River or Brook are the moſt and beſt Trouts; becauſe *England* and *Wales*, hath ſo many Rivers and Rivulets plentifully ſtored therewith; that it would puzzle the Accuteſt Naturaliſt to reſolve which ought to have the preheminence, and be moſt eſteemed.

Theſe Fiſh are found, and principally affect to lye near, and towards the ſources and Spring-heads of Rivers, and the Trouts are better or worſe, bigger or leſſer, according to the nature of the Soils on which the River runs; Pure, Clear, Cryſtalline, and Tranſparent Rivers and Rivulets, running on Rocks, Stones, or Pebbles, eſpecially on Lyme Stones, are experimentally found to breed and afford the moſt delicate and beſt Trouts.

When ever you make an Artificial Palmer-Worm or Fly, which is to be made with a Hackle Feather, if you uſe a brown or red Hackle, then be ſure to dub with red Silk; if a dun Hackle, then dub with yellow or Limon coloured Silk; if a black Hackle, then dub with blew or ſky coloured Silk; and they are excellent for Trouts.

Baits

Baits for the Trout.

§ 4. Principal Baits for Trouts at the Ground are Worms, as the Brandling, Gilt-tail, Meadow Worm, Tagtail, and red Worm, but for a mighty Trout the Dew-Worm well ſcoured; the two firſt are the principal Worms for him all the Year, both in clear and muddy Waters; the other for Waters diſcoloured with Rain: Then a Cod-bait which is either for top or bottom, but always to be uſed in clear Waters only; ſo is the Clap-bait, and the Water-cricket. He'll take the Palmer-fly, or Wooll-bed, and all ſorts of Flies both Natural and Artificial at top of the VVater, eſpecially the Palmer-fly, VVater-cricket, Stone-fly, Green-drake, Aſh-fly, Fern-fly, and Ant-fly. He'll likewiſe take a Cod-bait, and Clap-bait that are factitious, or counterfeited with yellow VVax, Shammy, or Buff, as before is directed, Chap. 4. Sometimes alſo he takes the Oak-worm, and Hawthorn-worm, at top of the VVater, and ſometimes within the VVater, but always in clear VVater.

The Minnow, Bull-head, his Guill Fins cut off, and the Loach eſpecially, are excellent Baits in a clear VVater for great Trouts in *March*, *April*, and *September*, about Mid-water, to trowl with in the Streams, or on dark, cloudy, gloomy, windy days in the Deeps.

A Trout will alſo take all ſorts of Bobs,

Palmers, Catterpillars, young Frogs, Gentles, Dores, the young brood of VVaſps, Humble-Bees, and Hornets; Beetles, their Legs and uppermoſt VVings cut off; Graſhoppers, their Legs, and outmoſt VVings cut likewiſe off; as the Brandling, Gilt-tail, Meadow-worm, Tag-tail, Red-worm, and Dew-worm, are the beſt VVorms for the Ground Angle, to be ſuited reſpectively to the temperature and colour of the River, (although the Brandling, Gilt-tail, and Meadow-worm, are for either muddy or clear VVaters and perhaps the beſt;) ſo is the Cod-bait, Clap-bait, VVater-cricket, Palmer-worm, Stone-fly, Green-drake, Oak-fly, Fern-fly, Ant-fly, and Artificial Fly, the beſt for the Trout at the top of the VVater when clear. Dibble with the VVater-cricket, Stone-fly, Green-drake, Graſhopper, and Sharn-bud, as they ſeverally come in ſeaſon; dib alſo with the Oak-fly, and a Cod-bait, at point of the Hook, and let them ſink half a foot, or a foot within VVater, and it's a dead Bait for a Trout: Alſo a Clap-bait, with Artificial Head and VVings, as Cod-bait is uſed, is excellent for top, in like manner uſe the Oak-worm, and Hawthorn-worm, or Green-grub. Of each of theſe particular Baits, ſee more in the Chapter of Baits.

The ways to Angle for Trouts.

§ 5. The way to Angle for Trouts at Ground, is with the running Line without any float thereon, and with 1 or 2 ſmall pellets of Lead for Plumbs, *&c.* Or he's caught by float Angling at Ground, at Mid-water by trowling, at top of the VVater by dibbing, and the Caſt-fly, of all which ways you'll ſee more particular deſcriptions hereafter: Only let me not forget to inform you, that when you Angle in a clear VVater, either for Trouts, Graylings, or Salmon Smelts, if you can attain ſo much skill and dexterity as to Angle with a ſingle Hair for 2 links next Hook, as is in the 2 Chap. Sec. 15. and 12 directed, you will certainly catch 3 Trouts for one, for any that Angles with 3 Hairs next the Hook, and although you'll now and then loſe a great Trout by his breaking your Line, yet if you had not been ſo ſmall tackled, ten to one he had never bit, and the numerouſneſs of Fiſhes bites compenſates the loſs; and obſerve that you may Fiſh with leſs hazard at bottom than top with fine Tackle, becauſe a Trout at Fly ſhoots or ſprings with a rapid agility at your Bait, and from you when he hath taken it, with his head generally downwards, but at the Ground, or Mid-water, he takes the Bait gently, and therewith glides far more leiſurely; likewiſe a Trout takes leſs notice of a thick Line at top than bottom, by reaſon

reaſon of his eagerneſs. The excellent proportion, ſhape, length, true plying, gentleneſs, freedom from top-heavineſs, and well mounting of the Hazle-Rod for clear Waters, for Trouts, Grailings, and Salmon Smelts, contributes much to your ſucceſs in this way, together with your own freedom from raſh and eager humours: And if your Hair be ſtrong, you may eaſily overcome and maſter a Trout 13 inches long with a ſingle Hair next Hook, eſpecially if you have Water-room, and be unmoleſted with Wood or Trees.

Chief Biting time for Trouts.

§ 6. A Trout bites beſt in a muddy riſing Water, or in a Water that is clearing after a Flood, or in dark, gloomy, cloudy, or windy weather, early in the Morning (from mid *April*, until the end of *Auguſt*) from Sun riſing until about half an hour after Ten a Clock, and from about 2 a Clock in the Afternoon until Sun ſet, and oftentimes in the Evening; but 9 a Clock in the Forenoon, and 3 in the Afternoon, are his chiefeſt and moſt conſtant hours of biting at Ground, or Fly, as the Water ſuits either: In *March*, beginning of *April*, *September*, and part of *October*, (for you ought not to Angle for Trouts after the 15 of *October*, until the end of *February*) he'll bite from about one hour after Sun riſing all day until almoſt Sun ſet, and beſt then in warm, Sun-ſhiny weather,

ther, and middle part of the day. *March*, *April*, *May* and part of *June*, are his chiefeſt Months; though he bites well in *July*, *Auguſt* and *September*. After a ſhower in the evening he riſes well at Gnats: And in a warm evening, or in the evening of a hot day in Summer, you may have Sport with dibbing. When he takes the Minnow and Loach, *vide antea*.

§ 7. In little Brooks that fall into larger Rivers, where it Ebbs and Flows only in freſh Waters, or alittle brackiſh; if you begin at the mouth of ſuch Brooks, juſt as the Tide cometh in, and go up the Brook with the head of the Tide, and return with the Ebbing of the Water, you'll take good Trouts, and have much Sport; and if the Tide do not muddy the Water, they will alſo riſe at the Fly at ſuch a time.

§ 8. *Vid.* Chapter 9 throughout.

§ 9. In ſmall clear Brooks, if you come in, or immediately after a ſhower that hath raiſed the Water, or take it juſt as any Mill-water beginneth to come down, and ſo go along with the courſe of the Water, Trouts will then bite well, becauſe they expect the Water will then bring down Food with it, and they come forth to ſeek it: But in ſmall Brooks or Rivers, when the Mills ſtand and keep up the Water, you'll have little or no Sport, at Ground eſpecially; and but little with Fly; for the Trout at ſuch time is fearful, and dare ſcarce venture out of his hold.

§ 10. When

§ 10. When you Angle for Salmon or Trout, and all day long have had little, or rather no Sport, either at Ground or Fly, next night, eſpecially at the beginning of it, and until mid-night, or near it, they will not fail to bite, either at Ground, or Fly (as the Seaſon, or Water ſuits beſt for either) freely and eagerly, if the weather be not nipping cold or froſty.

§ 11. When you Angle for Trouts with Fly or Ground Baits, you need not make above three or four trials in one place; for he will then either take it, or make an offer, or not ſtir at all.

§ 12. When Rains raiſe the Rivers, and almoſt continually keep them equal with their Banks, or above their ordinary height, Trouts leave Rivers and larger Brooks, and fly into ſuch ſmall Brooks, as ſcarce run at all in Summers that are dry; in ſuch Brooks then Angle for them. Trouts generally quit the great Rivers and Brooks at *Michaelmas*, and go into ſmall Rills, or Rivulets to ſpawn, and are frequently there deſtroyed by idle, looſe and diſorderly Fellows, with groping or otherwiſe, which does more injury to the breed of Fiſh, than all the Summers Angling. Thus I have known a River very plentifully ſtored with Trouts, in three or four years utterly ſpoiled.

§ 13. When you Angle for Trout or Salmon, with Worm or at Ground, let your Bait drag

drag on the Ground as little as may be; but touch the Ground it muſt, eſpecially for Trouts: But Mr. *Cotton* adviſes, when you Angle with a Float, to let the Bait be as near the bottom as you can, but not drag, which perhaps may do well; but the Experience of the running Line contradicts this Opinion, for therewith the Bait always drags; and there is no better way at Ground yet known, for the catching of Trouts, than the running Line: Yet, I confeſs, if you Angle either with Cod-bait, Clap-bait, or Water-cricket at Float, that the Bait ſwimming very near the bottom as may be, but not touching it, may do beſt.

When you Angle for Trouts, and only catch Minnows, be aſſur'd there are no Trouts there; therefore remove to another place. A young Trout is a good Bait for the Pike.

CHAP. XI.

Obſervations on the Salmon.

Nature, ſeaſon and ſpawning time of Salmon.

§ 1. THE Salmon is call'd the King of Freſh-water Fiſh: Breeds in Rivers relating to the Sea, yet ſo high as admits of no

no Tincture of Salt, or Brackiſhneſs. It is preferred (by ſome) before all Fiſhes, whether Marine, Fluviatile, or Lakiſh; it is wonderfull Sweet, and of extraordinary Nouriſhment, and therefore (unleſs eaten moderately) cauſeth Surfeits, if it be pickled like Sturgeon, ſtrengthens the Stomach much, and provokes to an Appetite. The *Salmunculi*, Shuins, or Salmon Smelts (which are about bigneſs of a Freſh Herring) are yet lighter and better food, and eaten as the other, or Trouts; they are in Seaſon almoſt all the ſix hot Months in moſt Rivers, only the *Wye*, in *Monmouth ſhire*, hath both Trouts and Salmon in Seaſon, from *September* to *April*; and ſo have ſome other particular Rivers, but they are rare. They Spawn in the end of *Auguſt*, or in *September*; having delighted himſelf all Summer in the Freſh-waters, (into which he comes at Spring) in *October* he returns to Sea, where he lives till Spring, and grows exceeding large; but in the Freſh-waters only he grows Fat, and that in the Summer. If about *Michaelmas* he chance to be ſtop'd by Flood-gates, or Weirs, from going to Sea, and enforced to take up his Winter Quarters in the Freſh-waters, he grows Sick, Lean, Unſeaſonable, Kipper, Inſipid and Taſtleſs, and in one year pines away and dies. Their Age is about ten Years, and their Growth is very ſudden, after they get into the Sea, as quickly as a Goſling becomes a Gooſe. They are about five Months

out

out of Seaſon, after Spawning. It is ſaid, that our Engliſh Salmon is the beſt in *Europe*, and the *Thames* beſt in *England*: But in the North, behind *Lancaſter*, there is as good Salmon as any in *England*, if judicious Palats are not miſtaken. Salmons when in Seaſon, have their Bodies adorn'd with Black or Blackiſh Spots, and Trouts with Red.

Moſt Rivers in *England* and *Wales*, where they diſembogue themſelves into the Sea, and ſo upwards the River, for ſeveral Miles, are abundantly ſtored with Salmons; but of principal Note, are the *Thames*, *Severn*, and *Trent*, and *Lon* at *Lancaſter*, and about *Cockerſand Abbey*, at *Wirkinton* in *Cumberland*, *Bywell* in *Northumberland*, *Durham*, *Newcaſtle* upon *Tine*, *Dee* in *Cheſhire*, and the Rivers *Uſk* and *Wye* in *Monmouth-ſhire*, wherein are both Salmons and Trouts in Seaſon all the whole Year. At *Kilgarran* upon the *Tivy* in *Pembrock-ſhire*, where is a Catadoup, or very high Cataract, call'd the Salmon Leap; and the fall is ſo downright and high, that People ſtand and wonder at the ſlight and ſtrength, by which they ſee Salmons leap, and get out of the Sea into the River; for Salmons coming out of the Ocean to Spawn, and deſirous to paſs farther into the River, when they meet with this Obſtacle, as Mr. *Drayton* deſcribes in his *Poly-Albion*;

Here

Here when the labouring Fiſh does at the foot arrive,
And finds that by his ſtrength he does but vainly ſtrive;
His Tail takes in his Mouth, and bending like a Bow,
That's to full compaſs drawn, aloft himſelf doth throw.
Then ſpringing at his height, as doth a little wand,
That bended end to end, and ſtarted from Man's Hand,
Far off it ſelf doth caſt, ſo does the Salmon Vault;
And if at firſt he fail, his ſecond Summer-Salt,
He inſtantly eſſays, and from his nimble Ring,
Still yerking, never leaves, until himſelf he fling
Above the oppoſing Stream. ——

According to which, *Auſonius* Elegantly writes,

Nec te paniceo rutilantem viſcere Salma,
Tranſierim, latæ cujus vaga verbera caudæ
Gurgite de medio ſummas reſeruntur in undas.

In the River *Ban* in *Ireland*, there is likewiſe a Catadupa, or as is vulgarly call'd, a Salmon Leap. This Rivers head is in the Mountains of *Mourn* in the County of *Down*, and

and paſſes through *Lough Eaugh*, or *Lough Sidney*, a large Lake in the County of *Colran*: This River (ſays Mr. *Cambden*) breeds Salmons in abundance, above any other River in all *Europe*; becauſe, as ſome think it exceeds all other for clearneſs; in which ſort of Water, Salmons take a ſpecial delight. It's almoſt incredible, (ſays Mr. *Cambden*, ſpeaking of the Rivers *Done* and *Dee* at *Aberdeen* in *Scotland*;) what abundance of Salmons, as well theſe Rivers as others in *Scotland*, on both ſides of the Realm do breed. This Fiſh was altogether unknown unto *Pliny*, unleſs it were the *Eſox* of the *Rhine*, but in this North part of *Europe* very well known.

In Autumn, they engender in ſmaller Rivers, and ſhallow Places for the moſt part, where and when they caſt their Spawn, and cover it over with Sand; and then are they poor and lean, ſo that they ſeem almoſt to be nothing but Skin and Bones. Of that Spawn in the following Spring, there comes a fry of tender little Fiſhes, which making towards the Sea, in a ſmall time grow to their full bigneſs, and returning back again to ſeek for the ſame River, where they were bred, (which they always endeavour to come back into) they ſtrive and ſtruggle againſt the Stream, and whatſoever lieth in their way, to hinder their paſſage, with a jerk of their Tail, and a certain leap, (whence perhaps call'd Salmons *à Saliendo*) as aforeſaid, to the wonder of the

beholders. They nimbly whip over, and ſtay in theſe Rivers of theirs, until they breed; during which time it's a Law in *Scotland*, they ſhould not be caught; *viz.* from the Aſſumption of our Lady (which is the 15*th.* of *Auguſt*,) to St. *Andrew*'s Day (*November* the 30.) and they are reputed amongſt the greateſt Commodities of *Scotland*; Becauſe it's there enacted, none ſhall be ſold to Engliſhmen, but for Engliſh Gold, and nothing elſe. So Trouts caught in the Lake *Lemanus* at *Geneva*, are a great part of the Merchandiſe of that City.

The Inhabitants on both ſides of *Solway Frith* in *Scotland*, at Low-water, on Horſe-back with Spears Hunt Salmons which are there very plentiful.

The Salmon's Haunt.

§ 2. Salmons love large ſwift Rivers, where it Ebbeth and Floweth; yet, ſometimes they are found in leſſer Rivers, high up the Country, chiefly in the latter end of the Year, when they come thither to Spawn: He likewiſe delights in the ſwift and violent Streams, and the cleareſt pebly, gravelly Rivers, uſually with Rocks or Weeds. He ſtays not long in a place, (as the Trout will) but is ambitious ſtill to go nearer the Spring head, nor does he lie (as the Trout and many other Fiſh do) near the Water-ſide, or Bank, or Roots of Trees, but ſwims in the deep and broad

broad parts of the Water, and uſually in the middle, and near the Ground, where he's to be fiſhed for. But the Salmon Smelts commonly lie in the rough and upper part of a gentle Stream, and in the middle thereof.

Salmon's principal biting time.

§ 3. Salmons beſt biting time is nine a Clock in the Forenoon, and three a Clock in the Afternoon, in a clear Water, and when ſome Wind bloweth againſt the Stream; and the only Months are from mid *April*, to the end of *Auguſt*. When ſtruck he uſually falleth to plunge and leap, but does not ordinarily endeavour to run to the end of the Line, as the Trout will. Young Salmons are very tender Mouthed, as well as Graylings; and are frequently loſt by their breaking hold, after Hooked: Therefore, ſome Perſons faſten two Hooks together, in like manner, as ſome double Pike Hooks, lately uſed in Trowling are made, not with the points oppoſite to one another, but almoſt a quarter of a circle from each other; and on them they make their Fly, that if one Hook break hold, the other Hook may not fail.

Baits for the Salmon.

§ 4. For a great Salmon, the principal Ground Bait is the Dew-worm, well ſcowred;

and for the ſmall Salmon Smelt, about bigneſs of a Herring, the Brandling, Gilt-tail and Meadow-worm well ſcowred, are the beſt Ground Baits; they will likewiſe take exceeding well the Bob of both ſorts, the Cod-bait, Water-louſe and Counterfeit Cod-bait (with yellow Bees-wax) in clear Water.

For Flies, he takes the ſame that the Trout generally doth, whether Natural, or Artificial; but the Natural Baits are generally taken better than the Artificial Fly, eſpecially by the ſmall ones.

If you put a Cod-bait or Gentle, either Natural or Artificial, but Natural better, at point of your Dub-fly Hook, they will take the Dub-fly better, eſpecially the Salmon Smelt. Flies made for the great Salmon are better, being made with four wings, than with two only; and with ſix better than with them of four. And if behind each pair of wings, you place a different colour for the Body of the Fly, it is much better, which argues that he loves to have ſeveral Flies on the Hook at once, for the Fly looketh, as if it were divers Flies together.

The wings muſt be made ſtanding one behind the other, whether four or ſix; alſo he delights to have both body and wings of the moſt gaudy colour, with long wings and tails. Silver-twiſt and Gold-twiſt, are good to uſe in dubbing the bodies. He's caught at Ground, with running Line or Float, the Bait touching,

or

or as near the Ground as poſſible; and, ſometimes he bites well lower than mid Water, at Ground Baits. He's caught with Dub-fly, Cod-bait, Clap-bait, Water-cricket, Oak-worm and Counterfeit Cod-bait at top of the Water; and the factitious Cod-bait will be taken by them, well within the Water. The great Salmon will take Minnows and Loaches ſometimes, and then you may Angle for the great Salmon, with a ring of Wire on the top of the Rod, through which the Line may run to as great a length, when he's Hooked, as is needful; and to that end, ſome uſe a Wheel about the middle of the Rod, or near their Hand, which may be far better underſtood by ſeeing one, than deſcribing it.

Vid. Chap. 10. Sect. 10, 13.

CHAP. XII.

Obſervations on the Umber or Grayling, &c.

Nature, haunt and ſeaſon of the Grayling, &c.

UMber and Grayling differ only in Name, only ſome call the largeſt Umber, and the ſmaller Graylings. They delight in Marl,

Clay, clear Waters, ſwift Streams, and far from the Sea; the *Hodder*, *Dove*, *Trent* and *Derwen*, in the Counties of *York*, *Derby* and *Stafford*, are beſt ſtored with them of any Rivers in *England*. The biggeſt is not above 18 inches long. They are in ſeaſon all the Year, but their principal ſeaſon is *December*, at which time he's black about Head, Guills, and down his Back, and has his Belly of a dark grey dapled with black ſpots; they are very jolly after mid *April*, and are ſaid to be of a Trout kind. His Fleſh even in his worſt ſeaſon, is firm, white, will eaſily calver, and is excellent Meat at all times, but when at beſt, little inferiour to the beſt Trout; and in *Swiſſerland* they are prefer'd before Trouts, but not ſo in *England*. He's a very nimble Fiſh, ſwift ſwimmer, but dead-hearted after hooked, has his Teeth in his Throat, is eager, and biteth freely, and will often bite at the ſame Fly, if not prickt; he's tender-mouth'd, and often loſt by breaking hold; therefore when you uſe a Fly, *vid cap.* 11. § 3.

§ 2. When you Angle for him within Water, his Bait by no means muſt drag on the Ground, he being a Fiſh that uſually ſwims nearer the middle of the Water, and lies always looſe, and more apt to riſe, than deſcend, even to a Ground-bait; therefore let your Bait be about 6 or 9 inches from the bottom, and to that end uſe a Float of Cork, rather than the Running-line, if you Angle particularly for this Fiſh;

Fiſh; but if for Trout and Grayling, then a Running-line.

Graylings Baits.

§ 3. He generally takes the ſame Baits that the Trout does: But his principal Ground-baits are the Brandling, Gilt-tail, Tag-tail, and the Meadow-worm well ſcour'd, Cod-bait, Bark-worm and Flag-worm; and at top he's taken either with Natural or Artificial Palmers, and Flies (eſpecially the Camlet-fly, and a Fly made of Purple-wool, and another made of light tawny Hair-camlet) as the Trouts are; he'll likewiſe take the Earth-bob and Clap-bait, *&c.*

CHAP. XIII.

Obſervations on the Pearch.

Nature, Haunt, &c. of Pearch.

§ 1. HE loves a gentle Stream of a reaſonable depth, ſeldom ſhallow, cloſe by a hollow Bank; and although Salmon,

Trout and Pearch delight in clear and ſwift Rivers, pebly, gravelly bottoms, or. green Weeds, yet Pearches are ſometimes found, but not in ſuch plenty and goodneſs in ſlow, ſlimy and muddy Rivers, as about *Oxford*, and he frequents creeks and hollowneſſes about the Banks.

He's a very good, wholeſome, and well-taſted Fiſh (eſpecially the River-Pearch) a bold biter, ravenous, and great devourer of other Fiſh, of ſlow growth, and not uſually above 14 inches long, and oftner about 10 or under. He has a Hog-back, arm'd with ſharp and ſtiff Briſtles, his Skin cover'd over with thick, dry, hard Scales, and hath (which few other Fiſh have) two Fins on his Back, but the *Sea* Pearch (which is better) hath but one Fin on his Back. The Pearch is deep bodied.

Pearches biting time.

§ 2. He'll not bite at all times or ſeaſons, being very abſtemious in Winter, only in the middle of the day (as other Fiſhes then do) he'll then bite; in Summer he'll bite all the day long, in cool, gloomy, cloudy or windy Weather, yet principally from ſeven a Clock in the Forenoon, untill after ten a Clock, and from about two in the Afternoon, till about ſix, and ſometimes later, even till Sun-ſet, eſpecially in hot Weather, and middle of Summer.

mer. He's ſtrong, and will contend hard and long for his Life; they accompany one another in Troops, (as all Fiſh that have Scales do) and if there be thirty or forty in a hole, they may at one ſtanding be catcht, one after another; be ſure you give him time to bite, for he's often miſt for want of that.

Pearches ſpawning time.

§ 3. He ſpawns but once a Year, and that about *February* or *March*, and carries his Teeth in his Mouth, which is large.

Baits for Pearch.

§ 4. His principal Baits are Brandling, Dew-worm, Red-worm and Meadow-worm, all to be well ſcowred, and the Minnow, Loach and ſmall Frog; he alſo takes bobs of both ſorts, Oak-worms, Gentles, Cod bait, the young brood of Waſps, Hornets and Humble-bees, Colewort-worm, Woolbed; and ſometimes any Bait but the Fly, which he never meddles with: He's beſt caught with a Float, your Bait being about 6 inches from the Ground; ſometimes they are caught about mid Water, or lower, and ſome will ſuffer the Bait to touch the ground, eſpecially the Worm, and judge it beſt. They are uſed as Baits for the Pike, the Fins being all cut off, but it's the worſt Bait of any, becauſe the Pike hath a very great antipathy againſt them.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Obſervations on the Pope, or Ruff.

§ 1. POpe or Ruff is like the Pearch, both in nature, diſpoſition and ſhape, but leſſer, being no bigger than a large Gudgeon, is a pleaſanter taſted, and better Fiſh than the Pearch; a greedy biter, and commonly abundance of them lie together in one reſerved place, where the Water runs deep and quietly. And one may catch forty or fifty at a ſtanding, and in ſandy places they delight and grow exceeding fat and ſweet. He takes the ſame Bait that the Pearch does, and bites at the ſame time; principally he'll take the ſmall red Worm, Meadow-worm and Gilt-tail; uſe a Float, and Angle for him as the Pearch, and bait the Water with Earth, or Sand, as for the Gudgeon.

For excellent Pearch and Ruff, the River *Yare*, that runs by *Norwich*, is famous; and Dr. *Cajus*, in his Book, call'd, *Rariorum Animalium Hiſtoria*, gives the Ruff a new Latin Name, and that not improperly; for it's all the Body over rough, and hath ſharp and prickly Fins, it delighteth in ſandy places, for ſhape like unto a Pearch, in colour brown and duskiſh above, but paliſh yellow beneath, marked by the Chaws with a double courſe of half Circles,

the

the Eye for the upper half of it of a dark brown, and the lower part of it ſomewhat yellowiſh, like delayed Gold, the ball and ſight thereof black; and this ſpecial Mark it hath, that there is a Line goeth along the Back, and faſtened to the Body (as it were) with an overthwart Thread, all to be ſpotted over the Tail and Fins with black ſpots, which Fins (as doth the Pearch's) ſtand and briſtle ſtiff and ſtrong when the Fiſh is angry, but when appeaſed, they fall flat again; the Fleſh reſembling that of a Pearch, is much commended for wholſomneſs, and eating tender and ſhort.

CHAP. XV.

Obſervations on the Gudgeon.

§ 1. OF Gudgeons the whiteſt are beſt; they are a good and pleaſant Food, wholſome, excellently taſted, of eaſy digeſtion, nouriſhing much, and increaſing good Blood, of a fine ſhape, Silver-colour'd, and beautified with black ſpots, both on his Body and Tail. He delights in ſandy, gravelly bottoms, gentle Streams and ſmall Rivers, rather than Brooks; in the heat of the Summer they are uſually ſcatter'd up and down in great Companies in the

the ſhallows of every River, but in Autumn when the Weeds begin to grow ſour or rot, and the Weather colder, then they gather together, and retreat into the deeper parts of the River, and are then to be Angled for there: Uſe a Float, and let your Bait always touch, or drag on the Ground. Some will Angle for them without any Float of Cork, but at hand, with a Running-line, as you do for Trouts in a clear Water, but it's not ſo good, except there be many in a pretty rough Stream, in Summer, but the Cork-line I however eſteem beſt. Be not too haſty with them when they bite, becauſe they'll ſometimes nibble a little before they take it, though they commonly take the Bait pretty ſurely.

§ 2. They are a very wholſome and pleaſant Fiſh, and breed two or three times a Year, the firſt time about *May*-day, but always in the Summer. When you Angle for them in ſhallows, ſtir or rake the Sand or Gravel with a Pole, and they'll gather to that place, and bite better; but for the Ruff or Pope, you muſt caſt Earth or Sand into the Water, where your Bait is, to make them more greedily take your Bait; do ſo likewiſe for the Gudgeon.

Biting

Biting time, and Baits for Gudgeons.

§ 3. He bites all the day, from the end of *March*, till *Michaelmas*, in or near a gentle Stream, and frequently on a gravelly, or rather ſandy Ground, but will not bite when very cold, nor for a little time after his ſpawning, which is in *May*, nor immediately after a Shower or Land-flood, but will bite well in gloomy, warm Weather, or in hot, Sun-ſhiny Weather. But they'll ſeldom bite either before Sun-riſe, or after Sun-ſet; but commonly begin to bite about one hour after ſun-riſe, and ceaſe an hour before Sun-ſet; becauſe they are afraid of being devour'd by great Fiſh, who then are ranging for Food. His principal Baits are the Gilt-tail, Brandling and Meadow-worm well ſcoured, and the ſmall red Worm, and he'll take Cod-bait, Gentles, or Waſps ſometimes, but never the Fly. *Vid. cap. 6. ſect.* 4. He's a very excellent Bait for the Pike.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Obſervations on the Carp.

§ 1. CArps ſeek muddy, ſandy bottoms, and deep ſtill Waters, and the deepeſt, ſtilleſt place of Pond or River, and green Weeds, which he loves exceedingly. If you cut Weeds in a River, the better to make a place clear, to Angle in for Carps, they will not (though they before haunted the place very much) come thither again for two or three Months; nor will they come near a Boat that you go in on a large Pond or River to Angle in for them, although Ruſhes or Weeds interpoſe; they are ſo wary, fearful and ſubtil; therefore ſtiled the freſh Water Fox, and by others, the Queen of Rivers The Spawn of Carps is very good; for the *Italians* thereof make red Caviare, and ſell the ſame to the Jews, who are prohibited (as appears by *Leviticus, cap.* 11.) to eat any Fiſh that wants Scales; therefore the Spawn of the Sturgeon, of which our common Caviare is made, is an abomination to them.

Suſſex is ſaid to be the beſt furniſhed with Carps of any County, whither they were firſt brought out of *Spain* by one Mr. *Maſcal*, about 15. of

15. of *Henry* 8. *Anno Dom.* 1524. as the ſubſequent Rhyme intimates: *Viz.*

Hops, Reformation, Turkeys, Carps, and Beer
Came all into *England* in one Year.

I am credibly inform'd, that in the Seas about the *Iſle of Man*, there are caught very excellent Tench and Carps.

Spawning time of Carps, &c.

§ 2. They breed better in Ponds, than Rivers, but not at all in cold Ponds, but in thoſe that are warm and free from bluſtering Winds, and in Marl-pits, or Pits that have clean Clay bottoms, or in new Ponds, or Ponds that lie dry a Winter ſeaſon, but they breed not ſo well in old Ponds, full of Mud and Weeds; where they like the Water and Soil, they'll breed three or four times a Year, and their firſt ſpawning time is about *May*-day; and as their increaſe is wonderful for their multitude, which is ſo great as to overſtock the Ponds, and thereby both ſtarve themſelves and other Fiſh therein, ſo their decay is myſterious, all being often gone, and none knows how. They live ten, twenty, thirty or forty Years, and ſome ſay more, and are (contrary to the Pike) better for age and bigneſs, the largeſt is rarely above 18 or 20 inches long; they are a fat, ſweet

ſweet and ſoft Fiſh, the Male better than the Female, and the white better than the yellow, and are beſt in *March*, and will live long out of Water. They begin to ſpawn at three Years old, and continue to do ſo till thirty. You'll ſeldom catch Carps in a River, with Angling, but in Ponds you may take ſtore; they'll feed on Graſs in the Pond, or ſides thereof.

Carps chief biting time.

§ 3. They bite very early and late in *April*, *May*, *June* and *July* and *Auguſt*, and in the Summer, all night in the ſtill part of the Water; have a long Rod, and keep ſtill, and out of ſight, when you Angle for them. When you ſtrike him, if you give him not play, he'll break all; for he's ſtrong, will ſtruggle long and ſtoutly; he's caught at mid Water, ſometimes lower, and ſometimes higher, as the Weather is, and uſe always a Float of Quill; when a large Carp takes the Bait, he runs to the farther ſide of the River or Pond. Bait the place you Angle in, for them, with ground Malt.

Baits for the Carp.

§ 4. Beſt Baits for the Carp, are Gentles, Waſps, Bobs, ſweet Paſtes, Dew-worm, Red-worm, Marſh-worm, Gilt-tail, Flag-worm, Cod-bait, Bread-grain boiled ſoft. Mr. *Walton* adviſes to dip a piece of Scarlet, breadth of a Die,

Die, in Oyl of Petre or the Rock, and put it above the Hook, having a Bait of Gentles below. In the heat of the day, in *June* and *July*, when Carps ſhew themſelves on the top of the Water, eſpecially amongſt Weeds, take a well-ſcoured Lob-worm, and caſt the ſame to them, as you would Angle with a Natural Fly, and they will bite, if you carefully keep out of ſight, feed for them.

CHAP. XVII.

Obſervations on the Tench.

Haunts of Tench.

§ 1. HIS haunts and times of biting are generally the ſame with the Carp, yet I have known them in *April*, on a cloudy, miſling, rainy Morning, the Wind South or Weſt, and warm, bite very well until eleven a Clock. He loves to feed in foul Water, and amongſt VVeeds, and he likes Ponds, better than Rivers, and Pits better than either: In ſome Pits they will breed only, and never thrive to any bigneſs, and in others they'll thrive and never

breed; and, like the Eel, he loves muddy Ponds; and notwithſtanding the ill character ſome have given on him, yet he's a good and pleaſant Fiſh, if eat in his ſeaſon, and well dreſt. He hath large Fins, very ſmall and ſmooth Scales, a red Circle about his Eyes, big, and of a gold colour, and from either Angle of his Mouth, there hangs a little Barb.

The River *Stowr*, in *Dorſetſhire*, is particularly commended for plenty of Tench and Eels; ſo is *Brecknock-mere*, in *Brecknockſhire* being two Miles in length, and as much in breadth, full of Pearches, Tenches and Eels. The Tench, when rightly pickled, is ſaid very much to reſemble Sturgeon in the eating.

Spawning time of Tench, &c.

§ 2. They ſpawn about the beginning of *July*, live long out of VVater, and by ſome eſteem'd the Phyſitian to other Fiſh, having a Medicinal Balm on his Skin; their beſt ſeaſon is from the beginning of *September*, until the end of *May*.

Biting time of Tench.

§ 3. Carp and Tench bite from Sun-riſe, until eight a Clock, and from four a Clock in the Afternoon, until after Sun-ſet, but in the hot Months from Sun-ſet all night.

Baits

Baits for Tench.

§ 4. Angle for them with a Float of Quill, the Bait being about 2 foot within Water, ſometimes more, ſometimes leſs: His beſt Bait is Gentles, Cod-bait; Flag-worm, Marſh-worm and red Worm well ſcoured; and as you uſe your Worms, put them by themſelves in Tar, a little before uſed only, and try whether it increaſes your ſport, which many affirm it does; but I could never find any advantage by it: He'll likewiſe take Waſps, and Paſtes, eſpecially if ſweet ones.

CHAP. XVIII.

Obſervations on the Bream.

Nature and Haunts of Bream, &c.

§ 1. BReam is a large and ſtately Fiſh at full growth, is dangerous to eat by reaſon of Bones, and is a kind of flat Carp, yet is whiter, and of better nouriſhment; breeds both in Rivers and Ponds, but in the latter

better; if he likes the Water and Air, he'll be very fat, is long in growing, yet a great breeder, even ſo great as to overſtock the Pond, and thereby conſume all the ſweet Feed, and ſtarve all other Fiſh. Some ſay Breams and Roches mix their Spawn together, and ſo there becomes a ſpurious breed of Breams. They ſwim in Companies, and he likes gentle Streams, ſandy, clay bottoms, and deepeſt and broadeſt part of a River or Pond. He's caught from Sun-riſing, till eight a Clock, in a gentle Stream, muddy, ſlimy Water, and a good gale of VVind, and in Ponds, the higher the Wind, and where the Waves are higheſt, and nearer the middle of the Pond, the better. Three a Clock, and four in the Afternoon, and ſo till Sun-ſet, are likewiſe good times to take them, but if the day be dark, cloudy, gloomy and windy, Breams will bite all the day. He ſpawns in *June*, or beginning of *July*, is eaſily taken; for after one or two gentle turns, he falls on one ſide, and ſo is drawn to Land with eaſe. You may Angle for them from the beginning of *April*, until *Michaelmas*, and if in Rivers in or near a gentle Stream.

Baits

Baits for the Bream.

§ 2. Principal Baits for the Bream, are red VVorm, Gilt-tail, and Meadow-worm well ſcoured, Paſtes, Bobs, Flag-worm, VVaſps, Gentles, a Graſshopper, his Legs cut off, and Flies, under Water, eſpecially green Flies. When he bites, he'll draw the Bait towards the farther ſide of the River. Angle with a Float, and let the Bait touch the Ground. And if you bait the place where you intend to fiſh, with ground Malt, it will draw them to that place, and you'll have far more ſport. In the ſame manner you ought to bait the place for Carps.

CHAP. XIX.

Obſervations on the Barbel.

Barbels Nature and Haunts.

§ 1. THE Barbel is of a fine caſt, and handſome ſhape, is large, with ſmall Scales, plac'd after a moſt exact and curious

manner; ſo call'd from his Barb or VVattels, at his Mouth, under his Noſe: In Summer he lives in the ſtrongeſt ſwifts of the Water, and under the ſhades of Trees; they much delight in the ſhalloweſt and ſharpeſt Streams, and lurk under Weeds, feeding on ſmall Gravel, or Sand, againſt a riſing Ground, where he'll root and dig in the Sand, with his Noſe, like a Hog, and there neſts himſelf; yet ſometimes he lies about deep and ſwift Waters, at Bridges, Flood-gates or VVeirs, where he'll remain among Piles or hollow places, and take ſuch hold of Moſs or Weeds, that the ſwiftneſs of the VVater is not able to force him thence; at the approach of VVinter, he forſakes the ſwift Streams and ſhallow VVaters, and by degrees, retires to thoſe parts of the River that are quiet and deep.

Spawning time of Barbel, &c.

§ 2. He's none of the beſt Fiſh either for wholſomneſs or taſte, yet not ſo deſpicable as ſome would make him, though he and the Chub are eſteem'd to be the worſt ſort of Fiſhes, yet good Cookery makes them of better reputation with thoſe that eat of them, than they are in vulgar Opinion. The Barbel ſpawns about *April*, and the Spawn is very unwholſome, (ſome ſay) almoſt Poyſon, yet they are often taken by Country People; for they both vomit and purge violently. *Aldrovandus* ſaith,

ſaith, That, the Barbels Fleſh taſts well, is tender, of eaſy Concoction, and of good Juice, but full of Bones, which perhaps is the reaſon he's contemn'd. They grow in ſeaſon about a Month after ſpawning.

Barbels biting time.

§ 3. He bites early in the Morning, from Sun-riſe, until ten of the Clock, and late in the Evening, from four a Clock, till Sun-ſet, and ſometimes later. Their principal biting Months, are from about the twentieth of *May*, until the end of *Auguſt*. He's a cunning, wary, ſubtil and ſtrong Fiſh, will ſtruggle long, and unleſs dexterouſly managed, breaks both Rod and Line. They flock together like Sheep, and are at worſt in *April*.

Baits for Barbel.

§ 4. His Baits muſt be ſweet, clean, well ſcoured, and not kept in muſty, ſour Moſs, and his Bait muſt touch the Ground, and to be Angled for with a Float. His prime Bait is Gentles, not too much ſcoured, new Cheeſe, Paſtes, Red-worm, and Dew-worm well ſcoured; and try the young brood of Waſps, Hornets, and Humble-bees, and the Bob of both ſorts. He'll often nibble or ſuck the Bait of the Hook, yet avoid the Hook's coming into his Mouth.

CHAP. XX.

Obſervations on the Roch, and of the Dace, or Dare, in ſome places call'd a Showler.

Nature, Haunts, &c. of Dace and Roch.

§ 1. THE Roch, and the Dace, Dare, or Showler, are much of a kind in matter of feeding, cunning, goodneſs, and uſually ſize. They like Gravel and Sand, and the deepeſt part of the River; under the ſhades of Trees, are Fiſh of no great eſteem very ſimple; become in ſeaſon about 3 weeks after ſpawning. The Dace or Dare ſpawn about middle of *March*, and the Roch about the middle of *May*, who is call'd the freſh Water Sheep for his ſimplicity; however is a very healthful Fiſh, whence the Proverb, *As ſound as a Roch.* Their being ſo full of Bones makes them leſs regarded. The beſt Roch are in the *Thames* about *London.* The Fleſh of the Dace is ſoft, ſweet in taſte, and of good nouriſhment; and pickled like Anchovis, after the *Italian* manner, with Allamot Salt, are ſtomachical; ſome pickle them like Herrings.

The

The *Italians* take them in Winter, but they are beſt in *February* and *March*, before they have ſpawned. They are eſteemed excellent food, by ſome, if roſted or broyl'd, and ſeaſoned with Salt, Vinegar, Oyl, Cinnamon and Pepper. The Roch is caught in Ponds, within 2 foot or leſs of the top; but the Dace ſhould have his Bait within 2 inches of the bottom, and ſometimes to touch the bottom; both Roch and Dace bite all the day long, from the riſing until the ſetting of the Sun. Angle for them with a Float.

§ 2. Beſt Baits for them are Earth-bob, Gentles, Cob-bait, Clap-bait, Oak-worm, Paſtes, Waſps, Sheep's-blood, Lip-berries, Periwinckles, ſmall White-ſnails, Hawthorn-worm, Colewort-worm, Cabbage-worm, and any Worm bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees, and Flies, eſpecially the Ant-fly; but the Roch takes Flies beſt within the Water, but the Dace at top of the Water, or within an inch of it: In Rivers they'll take likewiſe Brandlings, Gilt-tails, and Meadow-worm well ſcoured. In Ponds Angle for the Roch under Water-dock Leaves; they'll alſo take Bread-grain boiled ſoft: They are prodigious breeders for Number: They are very excellent Baits for Pike. Roches ſpawn is excellent to eat.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

Obſervations on the Chub, or Chevin.

Nature and ſpawning time of the Chub.

§ 1. THE Chub is no good Fiſh, timorous, although large, muſt be eaten the ſame day he's caught; his Head is the beſt part of him; his ſpawn is good, and he ſpawns in *March*, and becomes in ſeaſon a month after ſpawning, and is in ſeaſon from mid *May*, until after *Candlemas*, but his beſt ſeaſon is Winter. They uſually ſwim many together in Summer.

Chub's Haunt.

§ 2. He likes ſandy and clay bottoms, large Rivers, and ſtreams ſhaded with Trees; in Summer you'll find many together in a hole, ſometimes floating on the top of the Water, they may be then caught by Dibbing; and in hot weather he's caught near the mid Water or top; in colder weather nearer the bottom, or at bottom by a Ledger-bait, that is, when

the

the Bait reſts on the Ground in a certain place.

Chub's chief biting time.

§ 3. They bite from Sun-riſe until 8 a Clock, and from 3 a Clock in the Afternoon till Sun-ſet. After ſtruck he quickly yields, if a large one, but the leſſer ſtruggle briskly and longer. In Winter months they bite in the middle of the day, and in Sun-ſhine.

Baits for the Chub.

§ 4. He'll take almoſt any ſort of Bait, but his beſt Baits are ſeven Eyes, and Eel-brood, each about thickneſs of a Straw; alſo the Dew-worm and Red-worm well ſcoured; the Earth-bob, and Brains of an Ox or Cow, Cheeſe, Paſte, and the Pitch or Marrow of an Ox or Cow's Back-bone, fat Bacon; theſe are good Baits for the cooler Months. In the Summer Months, he takes all ſorts of Baits bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees, eſpecially the Oak-worm, Crab-tree-worm, Palmers, Wool-beds, Catterpillars, Cod-baits, Gentles, the young brood of Waſps, Hornets and Humble-bees, Beetles, their Legs cut off, Dores, Graſhoppers, Clap-baits, White-ſnails, and Black-ſnails, their Belly ſlit that the white appear; theſe Snails he takes very early in the morning, but not in the heat of day. He'll likewiſe take

Min-

Minnows, Loaches, and Bull-heads, and ſmall Frogs, either by night or day; likewiſe he'll take Lip-berries, Colewort-worm, Cabbage-worm, Hawthorn-worm, Fern-fly, great Moth, the great Brown-fly which lives on an Oak like a Scara-bee, and the Black-bee which is bred in Clay-walls, and the Houſe-cricket, and peel'd Malt, or Wheat Grain boyl'd ſoft; alſo Raſp-berries, Black-berries and Mulberries. He loves a large Bait, as a Waſp, and a Colewort-worm, and then a Waſp all on the Hook at a time; and he would have diverſe ſorts of Flies on at once, and a Fly and a Cod-bait, or Oak-worm together.

How to Angle for the Chub.

§ 5. He's caught by a Float at mid Water, or lower, at top by Dibbing, and at bottom by a Ledger-bait. When Cattel in Summer come into the Fords, their Dung draweth Fiſh into the lower end thereof. At ſuch time Angle for Chub, with Tackle and Bait ſuitable, and you'll have ſport. Take off the Beetles Legs and uppermoſt Wings when you uſe them; do the like by the Graſhopper.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXII.

Obſervations on the Eel.

Eels their Nature and Kinds, &c.

§ 1. EEls are ſaid to be bred ſeveral ways, either by Generation, as other Fiſh, or of mud, putrefaction of the Earth, or ſome Dew that falls on the Water-ſide in *May* or *June*, and is condenſed and enlivened by the Suns calid influence; others ſay, when Eels grow old, they breed; others out of the corruption of their own Age. There are 4 ſorts of Eels, the Silver Eel, and the Greeniſh or Yellowiſh Green Eels breed by Generation, and not by Spawning, her brood coming alive from her, no bigger, nor longer than a ſmall Pin, are the beſt: The Blackiſh Eel, which hath a broader, flatter and larger Head than ordinary, and the Eel with Red Fins; the Blackiſh Eel is the worſt. They live about 10 years, and after they get into the Sea they never return, neither do they at any time go, or ſwim up the River they breed in, but always downwards; ſo that catch what numbers you pleaſe with leaps or weels at Mills, and it's no prejudice to the River. They are always

always in ſeaſon and very good, but their very beſt ſeaſon is Winter, and their worſt in *May*. Eels are impatient of cold, for in the 6 cooler months they ſtir not up and down, neither in Rivers nor Ponds, but get into the ſoft Earth or Mud, and there many of them bed themſelves together; they ſeldom ſtir in the day time, unleſs the Water be mudded and raiſed a little by Rain; but are moſt uſually caught in the night.

There is likewiſe the Conger or great Sea-Eel, which has a white, fat, and ſweet Fleſh, nouriſhing to exceſs; therefore dangerous, becauſe of ſurfeits. They are firſt par-boyl'd in Water, with ſtore of Salt and ſweet Herbs, then broyl'd, ſo they are exceeding good food: Or, you may firſt par-boil them in Water and Salt, then highly ſeaſon them, and bake them in a Pot in the Oven. The ſmall ones are taken between *Glouceſter* and *Tewksberry*, and below *Warrington* in *Lancaſhire*; the great ones only in the ſalt Seas.

There is likewiſe a Lamprey, or Lampron, whoſe Fleſh is ſweet, good, and of much nouriſhment, increaſing Luſt; and by reaſon of its luſciouſneſs, eaſily cauſes ſurfeits, if much eaten, and is for that cauſe bad even for ſtrong Stomachs, eſpecially ſuch as are Paralytick, Gouty, Aguiſh, or Old. This Lamprey is beſt in *March* and *April*, being then fatteſt; in Summer they are harder and leaner. The *Italians* beat them on the tail till almoſt

almoſt dead, then gagg them with a whole Nutmeg, and ſtop every oylet-hole with a Clove, then caſt them into Oyl and Malmſey, with crumbs of Bread, and a few Almonds blanch'd and minced, to correct and better their Fleſh, and then broil them. They are about a yard long, live in the Sea in Rocky places, and in the mouths of Rivers, and weigh about 12 pound weight. But I ſuſpect my ſelf to be impertinent, in ſaying thus much of the Conger and Lamprey, ſince they afford the Angler no ſport; therefore I will return to my Eel, and tell you that the Eel hath a very ſweet Fleſh, fat, white, pleaſant, and yields much nouriſhment; they are beſt roſted and broiled; or firſt par-boyl'd in Salt and Water, and then roſted, or broiled, which makes them very tender, if par-boyl'd firſt; or after par-boyling in Salt and Water, you may fry them in a Pan, *&c.* They are apt to cauſe ſurfeits; therefore eat ſparingly of them, and drink a Glaſs of Wine after eating them.

The Rivers *Stowr* in *Dorſetſhire*, and *Ankam* in *Lincolnſhire*, and *Irk* in *Lancaſhire*, are fam'd by their reſpective Neighbours for very excellent Eels; and the following Rhime is frequent in the Mouths of *Lincolnſhire* Ruſticks; *viz.*

Ankam Eel, and *Witham* Pike,
In all *England* is none like.

In

In *Ramſey-mere* in *Huntingtonſhire*, are ſtore of Eels and large Pikes, which they there call Hagets; *Cambridgeſhire* fancies ſhe has the moſt and beſt Eels, if you'll credit her Natives.

The *Severn* in *Worceſterſhire*, breeds and feeds ſuch a number of freſh Water Lampreys, as if Nature had there ſtored a Pond with them; theſe Fiſh are like to Eels, ſlippery and blackiſh, but beneath on their Bellies ſomewhat blew; at either ſide of their Throat they receive and let in freſh Water at ſeven holes, becauſe they want Guills; they are beſt in the Spring time, being then very ſweet; for in the Summer the inner Nerve or String which ſerves them inſtead of a Back-bone, grows hard; and this String or Nerve is always to be taken away when you dreſs them. And, whenſoever you either roſt, fry, or broil Eels, Congers, or Lampreys, be ſure they be done brown, tender and criſp; and firſt well par-boyl'd in Water, with ſtore of Salt and Fennel, or ſweet Herbs, which mightily corrects and renders their Fleſh more pleaſant, tender and palatable.

Haunts of Eels.

§ 2. In the day time they hide themſelves under ſome Covert, roots of Trees, Stocks, Stones, Bruſh-wood, Piles, Boards, or Planks about Flood-gates, Weirs, Bridges or Mills, or in holes in the Rivers bank; and they delight in ſtill Waters, and in Waters that are foul

or

or muddy; tho the ſmaller Eels are found in all ſorts of Rivers and Soils: They are a very pleaſant and delicate Fiſh, and one may eaſily ſurfeit on them. A piece of an Eel is a very good and ſweet Bait for the Pike.

Baits for Eels.

§ 3. Beſt Baits for Eels are Dew-worm, Red-worm, and Lamprey that's very ſmall, and young brood of Waſps, Minnow, Loach, Bull-head, his Head cut off, very ſmall Gudgeon, Bleak, and ſmall Roch, a Hen or Chickens Gut, Beef or Horſe Fleſh; the four firſt are proper for him, either by day or night; but the reſt are to be uſed with night Hooks only.

Ways of catching Eels.

§ 4. He's caught in the day time by a Ledger-bait, by Snigling, or Brogling and Bobbing; and by night with laying of night Hooks, baited with ſeven Eyes or Eel-brood, each about thickneſs of a Straw, Minnow, Loach, or Bull-head, his Head cut off, ſmall Roch and Dace, ſmall Gudgeon, a Hen or Chickens Gut, Dew-worm, Beef or Horſe Fleſh, a Bleak, or a Red-worm, Pith or Marrow in the Back-bone of an Ox, Cow, Calf, *&c.*

Snigling, or Brogling for Eels.

§ 5. Brogling, or Snigling is thus performed, get an exceeding ſtrong and long Line, and a ſmall compaſſed Hook, baited with a well ſcoured Red-worm, or Dew-worm; hold one end of the Line in your Hand, then place the upper end of your Hook very eaſily in the cleft of a long Hazle-ſtick, that it may eaſily ſlip out: With this Stick and Hook thus baited, ſearch for holes under Stones, Timber, Roots, or about Flood-gates, Weirs, or Piles, and put the Bait leiſurely therein; if there be a good Eel, give her time and ſhe'll take it, but be ſure ſhe hath ſwallowed it, then very leiſurely draw her out by degrees; for ſhe lying double in her hole, will with the help of her Tail break all, unleſs you give time for her to be wearied with pulling, and ſo hale her out by degrees not pulling too hard.

This way of catching Eels, is only to be practiſed when the Waters are low, and on a hot Summers day.

Bobbing for Eels.

§ 6. Bobbing for Eels is thus; take the largeſt Garden-worms well ſcoured, and with a Needle run a ſtrong Thread through them, from end to end; take and uſe ſo many as at laſt

laſt you may wrap them ſlackly about your hand a dozen times at leaſt, then tie them faſt with the two ends of the Thread, that they may hang in ſo many long boughts or hanks, then faſten all to a ſmall, ſtrong Cord, about 2 yards long, and about a handful or 8 inches above the Worms, tie the Cord on a knot (for the knot on the Cord ſhould always be about 6 or 8 inches diſtant from the Worms) then get a Lead-plumb 3 quarters of a pound weight, ſhaped like a Pyramid, and bore a hole through the middle of this Lead from end to end, ſo as the Cord may eaſily paſs to and fro, then put the upper end of this Cord through the Plumb, (the thicker end of the Plumb being downwards) and let the Plumb reſt on the knot on the Cord above the Worms, then fix the upper end of the Cord (which ſhould not be above 2 yards long) to a ſtrong and long Pole. Thus prepared, Angle in a muddy VVater, and either in the deeps or ſides of Streams, and you'll feel Eels tug ſtrongly and eagerly at them, when you think they have ſwallowed the Worms as far as they can, gently draw up your VVorms and Eels, and when you have them near the top of the Water, hoiſt them amain to Land, and thus you may take 3 or 4 at once, and good ones too, if ſtore there be.

Theſe two ways of Snigling and Bobbing, are proper only for Eels, no other Fiſh being to be caught after that manner.

CHAP. XXIII.

Obſervations on the Pike.

Nature of the Pike.

THE Male Pike is better than the Female, which is out of ſeaſon a great part of Summer. And,

§ 1. The Fleſh of the Pike is whiter, ſubtiller, and more excellent than that of the Carp, and is ſo harmleſs, that ſick Perſons may eat thereof. The Spawn or Rows provoke both Vomit and Stool, and are us'd by Ruſticks for that purpoſe. He is a great devourer of other Fiſh, whereby he acquires the name of freſh Water Tyrant or Wolf. He's long-liv'd, as to live 20 or 30 years, ſome ſay 200 years, but others will allow his Life to be not above 10 years; the Eel and Carp are better for age and bigneſs, but ſo is not the Pike; their chief ſeaſon is from the end of *May*, until *Candlemas*, the middle ſize being beſt and fatteſt; his bites are venemous; he always ſwims by himſelf, and not in company; he breeds but once a year, and that in *February* or *March*; he's a bold and greedy biter, and is not afraid of a ſhadow, or ſeeing people. The beſt Pikes are

in

in Rivers, next thoſe in great Ponds or Mears, and the worſt in ſmall Ponds. *England* hath the beſt Pikes of any in *Europe*, and *Lincolnſhire* the biggeſt, though about *Oxford* there are very excellent Pikes, and large ones too. They grow to the length of 45 Inches.

The Pikes Haunts.

§ 2. He loves a ſtill, ſhady, and unfrequented place, ſandy, chalky or clay bottoms, ſtill Pools, full of Fry, and ſhelters (the better to ſurpriſe his Prey unawares) himſelf amongſt Bull-ruſhes, Weeds, Water-docks or Buſhes, and often he bites about the middle of the River or Pond, and always about mid VVater, the Bait generally being in a continual and gentle motion, and never to be leſs than a foot from the Ground.

The Pikes chief biting times.

§ 3. In *April*, *May*, *June*, and beginning of *July*, he bites beſt early in the Morning, and late in the Evening, and ſeldom to any purpoſe in the night of all the year, and he bites beſt in a clear VVater and a gentle Gale, in ſtill places uſually, or at leaſt in a gentle Stream, and three a Clock in the Afternoon is his beſt hour in *July*, *Auguſt*, *September*, and *October*, in a clear VVater and gentle Gale, in ſtill places, or a gentle Stream.

In *September* and all Winter Months, he bites all the day long, eſpecially about three a Clock in the Afternoon, the VVater being clear, and the day windy, and then indeed he bites beſt, both in VVinter and Summer, eſpecially when the day is dark, cloudy, gloomy and windy; but in a muddy Water he bites not well, except after a Flood, and the River be almoſt clear, and then he bites pretty well; for after a glut of Rain, or ſome great Showers, a Pike never bites well, nor in a muddy VVater, nor at ſpawning time about mid *March*. Thoſe that are fat, are uſually yellow and ſpotted, but a thin lean Fiſh is white and pale.

Baits for the Pike.

§ 4. He takes all ſorts of Baits, except Fly, but principal Baits are large Gudgeons, Roches, ſmall Daces, large Minnows, Loaches, Bull-heads, Bleaks; in *July*, young Frogs, Salmon Smelts no bigger than a Gudgeon, Smelts or Sparlings that are ſmall, freſh and ſweet, and well faſtened on the Hook; for they are very tender. Fat Bacon is uſed by ſome for a Bait for him in the Winter Months. A young Trout, a young Jack, Pearch, his back Fins cut off, and a piece of an Eel are good Baits likewiſe for the Pike; and be ſure that all your Fiſh Baits, as Roch, Dace, *&c.* be very freſh and ſweet when you uſe them for him. Pearch

is

is the worſt Bait of any, and to be uſed only for want of others.

Ways to catch the Pike.

§ 5. He's caught four manner of ways, *viz.* by a ledger Bait, by the Snap, Snare, and Trowling; of all which you'll ſee hereafter plentifully in this Book: But however procure ſome expert Angler, the firſt time you fiſh for him, to accompany you, and ſhew you the way. Let your Bait for Pike, be always about mid Water, and never to touch the Ground, but at leaſt a foot from the bottom.

CHAP. XXIV.

Obſervations on the Flook or Flounder.

§ 1. FLook or Flounder is a Sea-fiſh, which wanders far into freſh Rivers, and there dwells and loſes himſelf, thriving to an hands breadth, and almoſt twice ſo long; is a pleaſant Fiſh, of good nutriment, ſtrengthens the Stomach, and cauſes appetite; the beſt Plaice have the blackeſt ſpots on their Body, as the beſt Flounders the reddeſt; is a Fiſh without Scales, therefore not eaten by the

Jews. He makes the Angler great paſtime, and although greedy biters, yet crafty; for they will nibble and ſuck at a Bait ſometimes before they ſwallow it, and if they perceive the Hook fly from it; therefore let your Bait be always in motion, and it will make them more eager; they commonly covet gravelly, ſandy bottoms, deep, gentle Streams, near the Bank, or at the end of a Stream, in a deep, ſtill place, or in a gentle Stream that is brackiſh, and ſometimes in the deepeſt, ſtilleſt place of the River, and near the Bank, but not ſo ordinarily as in a pretty ſwift, or rather gentle Stream. They bite all the day, from Sunriſe, until Sun-ſet, in *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, and part of *Auguſt*. His beſt Baits are ſmall Red-worms, and the Meadow or Marſh-worm well ſcoured, Gilt-tails, the young brood of Waſps and Gentles. Uſe a Float, and let your Bait touch the Ground.

CHAP. XXV.

Obſervations on the Bleak, or Bley.

§ 1. BLeak or Bley has a tender kind of Fleſh, but is no wholſome Fiſh, becauſe in Summer they go mad, by reaſon of

of a Worm in their Stomachs, but the Sea-bleak is a good Fiſh, he is always in motion, a very eager biter, and you may Angle for him with as many Hooks on your Line as you can conveniently faſten on it, they being tied along the Line, one half a foot above the other. He takes Gentles the beſt, and likewiſe the ſame Baits that Roch does, but they muſt be leſſer, alſo the Dub-fly which ſhould be of a very ſad, brown colour, and ſmall, and the Hook ſo too. He's caught at mid Water, or top, and he is almoſt always in motion. The *Variatæ*, or Sea-bleak changes his colour with every Light and Object, and is therefore call'd, the Sea-Camelion, but it has firm and wholſome Fleſh, and is as good as any Carp. They are very good Baits for the Pike.

CHAP. XXVI.

Obſervations on the Minnow or Penck, Loach, and Bull-head or Millers Thumb.

§ 1. THeſe Fiſh are of little conſideration, only ſometimes they are caught to make Baits on for other Fiſh, elſe they are only Women and Childrens Sport.

The

The Minnow appears firſt in *March*, continues until *Michaelmas*, and then betakes himſelf to the Mud, Weeds, or Wood in Rivers, to ſecure himſelf from Floods, devouring Trouts, and other Fiſhes of Prey.

He leaſt frequents deep, ſtill places or holes, where Trouts or great Fiſh ply, neither ſtirs in the night, nor in dark, windy Weather, for fear of becoming a Prey to Trouts or other Fiſh, who at ſuch times principally bite and range about for Food. His moſt uſual time is from an hour after Sun-riſing (if the day prove fair) till an hour before Sun-ſet. His Baits are chiefly ſmall Worms, Gilt-tail, Brandling, Cod-bait, *&c.* and is caught either at mid Water, or near, or cloſe to the bottom. Uſe a Float in Angling for him.

Loach and Bull-head.

§ 2. The Loach is a pleaſant Fiſh, light, delicate in Taſt, wholſome, and of excellent nutriment, breeding and feeding in clear, ſwift Brooks or Rills, living in the ſharpeſt Streams, and on the Gravel, and often under Stones, he ſomething reſembles an Eel in ſhape, and both Loach and Bull-head being of one nature and humor; their Female are in the Summer often full of Spawn, they are always caught on the bottom, the Bait touching the Ground, and their beſt Baits are the ſmall red Worm, Gilt-tail or Meadow-worm.

§ 3. The

§ 3. The Minnow, Loach and Bull-head (his Guill-fins cut off) are very good Baits to trowl with, in the Streams, or on dark, windy days, in the deeps, about a foot within Water, for the Trout, in *March*, *April* and *September*, and for the Pike, Pearch and Chub, from *March*, till *Michaelmas*, and for the Eel, at the ſame time; at night Hook, Fiſh take the Minnow, Loach and Bull-head, in the day time, in a clear Water only.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the various Ways of Angling, and firſt of the Running-Line.

ALL ſorts of Fiſh take Baits at the Ground ſometimes, although all will not take the Fly at top of the Water, and the Running-Line, without any Float thereon, and one or two ſmall pellets of Lead, for Plumbs, is the moſt proper and excellent way to Angle for a Trout with Worms, either in a muddy or clear Water, at Ground.

How

How to Angle with the Running-Line in a muddy Water.

§ 1. THE Running-Line, in a muddy Water, or one diſcoloured by Rain, ſhould be about half length of Rod, ſometimes more, and ſometimes leſs, and the two lowermoſt Links of three Hairs a-piece, then one of four Hairs, at top, whereof have a Loop or Water-nooſe, to put it to another Link of four Hairs, having likewiſe a Water-nooſe or Loop at its bottom, and then proceed with Links of five or ſix Hairs a-piece to the topmoſt; The three lowermoſt Links or Gildards ſhould be of a ſorrel, brown, or Cheſtnut colour; and have a Cane or Reed-rod, with a top neither too ſtiff, nor too ſlender, but in a mean, and the Cane or Reed to be about 3 yards and half long, and the top about 1 yard and half, or 2 yards of Hazle in one or two pieces, and 5 or 6 inches of Whale-bone, made round, ſmooth and taper, all which will cauſe the Rod to be 5 yards and half long, or 5 yards at leaſt which it ought to be.

§ 2. The Line ſhould have ſo much and no more Lead than will fit the Water you Angle in, *viz.* more in a great, troubleſome, rough River, than in a ſmaller that's quieter, as near as may be, ſo much only as will ſink the Bait to the bottom, and permit its motion without

any

any great heſitation or jogging on the bottom, and in Angling, carry the top or point of your Rod even with your hand, gently downwards (for you muſt begin at the head of the Stream, and let the Bait run downwards as far as the Rod and Line will permit) the Lead dragging and rowling on the Ground, no more of the Line being in the Water, than will permit the Lead to touch the bottom, (for you muſt keep the Line as ſtraight as poſſible, yet by no means ſo as to raiſe the Lead from the bottom or Ground) and when you have bit, you'll both feel and perceive by the point of your Rod and Line, then ſtrike gently, and ſtraight upwards, firſt allowing the Fiſh (by a little ſlackening the Line) a ſmall time to take the Bait.

But ſome ſtrike at the firſt biting of the Trout, but that is in a clear Water, for Trouts, Graylings and Salmon Smelts, which may not only do well, but is the beſt: Your Bait ſhould be a red Worm well ſcoured, or, which is better, a Brandling, Meadow-worm or Tag-tail, or, which I like beſt, both a Brandling and a Gilt-tail on the Hook at the ſame time, to be baited as is hereafter directed to bait two Worms to be on the Hook at once; and note, that you are often to renew your Bait, and generally, in a muddy Water, I Angle with two Worms on the Hook at once, as two Brandlings, two Meadow-worms, or a Brandling and Gilt-tail on the Hook at once; when I

Angle

Angle for Trouts, unleſs I uſe the Dew-worm, a Trout takes the Bait dragging on the Ground, either in a muddy or clear Water, when you uſe Worms, but a Grayling 9 or 12 inches from the bottom, and had rather riſe, than deſcend even to a Ground-bait.

As for the leading of the Running-Line with Plumbs, you are before taught at *Chap.* 3. § 10, 11, 12.

The manner of baiting a great Dew-worm.

§ 3. If you Angle for a great Trout, with a well ſcowred Dew-worm, in a muddy Water, or one diſcoloured by Rain, bait it thus, *viz.* put the Hook in him towards the tail, ſomewhat above the middle, and out again a little below towards the head, then draw him above the whipping or arming of the Hook, then put the point again into the head of the Worm, till it come near the place where the point of the Hook firſt came out, then draw back that part of the Worm, that was above the ſhank or arming of the Hook, and ſo fiſh with it; the Hook ſhould be pretty large.

How to bait two Worms.

§ 4. But if you Angle in a muddy Water for Trouts of the uſual ſize (*viz.* from 8 to 12 Inches long) then have two Brandlings, or two Meadow-worms, or a Brandling and Gilt-tail

Gilt-tail on the Hook at once, (which I eſteem beſt) and you are to bait them thus, *viz.* Run the point of the Hook in at the very head of the Brandling, and ſo down through his Body, till it be paſt the knot, or about middle of the Worm, and then let it out, and ſtrip the Worm above the whipping or arming (that you may not bruiſe it with your Fingers) till you have put on the other, by running the point of the Hook in below the knot or middle of the Worm, and upwards through his Body towards the head, till it be juſt covered with the head, which being thus done, ſlip the firſt Worm down over the arming or whipping again, till the knots or middles of both Worms meet together. Any two Worms may be thus baited.

How to bait a ſingle Worm proper for a clear River or Water, and Running-Line there.

§ 5. But if you Angle with one Worm only on the Hook (which is moſt proper for a Trout, Salmon Smelt, or Grayling, in a clear Water, at Running-Line) it is to be baited thus, *viz.* Put the point of the Hook in at the very tag of his tail, and run up his Body quite over all the whipping or arming, and ſtill ſtrip on almoſt an inch upon the Hair or Line, the head and remaining part hanging downwards,

wards and covering the point of the Hook, but many Anglers let the head hang downwards, and the point of the Hook to be bare, and ſo Angle with it; but others cover the point of the Hook with the Worms head, as aforeſaid, but nip off the very tip-end of the Worms head, and ſo Angle with it: However, many highly commend the Angling with Running-Line, in a clear Water, for Trouts and Salmon Smelts, with the Worms head hanging downwards, and the point of the Hook bare, and ſtrike then immediately upon the firſt bite or Touch of a Trout or Salmon Smelt.

How to Angle in clear Water with Running-Line.

§ 6. Thus you are to bait the Brandling, Gilt-tail or Meadow-worm, and only one Gilt-tail or ſmall Brandling to be on the Hook at a time, well ſcoured, your Hook being ſmall, your Line ſhould have two or three of the lowermoſt Links or Gildards to be of one Hair a-piece, and then one or two Links of two Hairs a-piece, and then one of three Hairs, and ſo proceed with three and four to the topmoſt Link: The Hair ſhould be white, or rather a duskiſh white or grey colour, and the Line generally about 2 yards ſhorter than the Rod, (*vid.* before *cap.* 2. and § 12. 15.) and leaded with a ſmall blackiſh Pellet of Shot for Plumb,

Plumb (*vid. cap.* 3. § 10, 11, 12.) thus Tackled and Baited, the Angle always in the Streams, evermore in a clear, rather than a troubled Water, and always up the Stream and River; ſtill caſting out the Worm before you, with a light one Handed Rod (made of Hazle, Yew, and Whale-bone, and 5 yards and half long at leaſt) like an Artificial-fly, where ſometimes it will be taken at the top, or within a very little of the ſuperficies of the Water, and commonly before the light Plumb can ſink it to the bottom, both by reaſon of the Stream, and that you muſt always keep your Hand and Worm in motion, although very ſlowly, by drawing ſtill back towards you the Bait, as if you were Angling with a Fly. The Rod muſt be light, pliant, long, not top heavy, true and finely made; and it's the beſt way of Angling for Trout, Grayling, and Salmon Smelts with Worms, in a clear Water eſpecially, by many degrees: And, if your Conſtitution would endure to let you wade to the Calf of the Leg, or Knee, into the tail of a ſhallow, clear Stream, and ſo keep off the Bank, you may almoſt take what Trouts, Graylings, or Salmon Smelts (if the River be but plentifully ſtored) you can deſire. However, ſome had rather uſe with the like ſmall and fine Tackle, when they Angle for Graylings only, with Worms, Cod-bait, Aſh-grub, or Dock-worm, a Float of Cork; becauſe they take their Baits beſt 6, or 9, or

12 inches from the bottom or ground: But I do not ſo well approve thereof, as the running Line.

The manner of Angling in very clear Rivers, by reaſon of their exceeding brightneſs, is very much different from the method commonly uſed in others, which by not being near ſo tranſparent, but of a more condenſed dark Body, admit of ſtronger Tackle, and allow a nearer approach to the Stream, and are not ſo difficult for Novices, as are our more rarified *Northern* Rivers, which require an able and judicious Artiſt, and very fine Tackle, with which Wonders may be effected in a clear Stream; and this way of Angling with a Worm and a ſingle Hair, for 2 links next Hook, in a clear Water, for Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts, is of a modern Invention, but on frequent Experiments, found ſo advantagious, that it's generally ſubſtituted (eſpecially from the riſing of the Sun until 8 a Clock) inſtead of the Artificial-fly, and by ſome affirmed to be the beſt way of killing moſt Fiſh in a clear Stream, even the day through.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Float Angling.

Float Angling.

§ 1. FOr Float Angling, your Line is to be longer than Rod by 2, or 3 foot in a River, but ſhorter than the Rod in Pits, Ponds, and Mears; when you Angle for Trouts, Graylings, or Salmons Smelts in a clear Water, then but one Hair next the Hook, *&c.* and ſuch a Rod and Line as directed for a Trout with running Line in a clear Water; but for moſt other Fiſh, and in a muddy Water, three Hairs next Hook, and of the thickneſs as is before directed, *chap.* 2. § 14, and 17, and let it be leaded as is directed, *chap.* 3. § 10, 11, 12. But if you Angle for the Chub, Carp, Barbel, Tench, or Pike, then your Lines muſt be ſtronger and your Rod too.

§ 2. The Bait muſt be proper for the Fiſh you Angle for; your Plumbs fitted to the Cork or Float, your Cork to the condition of the River you Angle in, that is, to the ſwiftneſs or ſlowneſs of it: (*vid.* before *chap.* 3.

§ 5, 6, 7, 8, 9.) And you must cast the Bait up the River, and let it run downwards as far as the Rod and Line will suffer. In a clear Water when you use Worms, Bait but with one Worm only. In a muddy or discoloured Water, Bait with 2 Worms at a time, as is before directed.

If you Angle in a clear Water, the colour of your Line must be white, or rather a duskish white, or gray colour. But if in a muddy Water, or one discoloured by Rain, then your Line for 2 yards next Hook ought to be of a sorrel, brown, or of a Chesnut colour; and the upper part of your Line of white Hair.

§ 3. This way you may Angle for most sorts of Fish, and the Bait must drag on the Ground for some sorts, especially the Trout, Gudgeon, Bream, Barbel, Flounder and Salmon; but for Grayling and Pearch 6 or 9 inches from the bottom, but the Pike, Ruff, Carp, Tench, Roch and Bleak at mid Water, sometimes lower and sometimes higher. The Chub is often taken with the Bait on the bottom, sometimes at mid Water in hot weather, sometimes at the top. The Dace takes all Ground Baits at bottom: Some let the Bait touch the ground or bottom, when they Angle for Pearch, Tench and Roch in Rivers, and like it best, although others disallow thereof, and would have the Bait to be about 6 inches from the bottom. In Ponds for Roch and Tench, Angle always about 2 foot within Water. Mr. *Cotton* directs

directs to Angle for a Trout with Float, and then the Bait to be as near the bottom one can, ſo as the Bait drag not, which is difficult, if not impoſſible, to be obſerved, by reaſon of the declivity of the bottom, and unevenneſs thereof in moſt places; and the daily experiment of the running Line, ſhews that a Trout will take the Bait at bottom well enough. The Eel is never to be Angled for with a Float, but always with a Ledger Bait, Snigling, Brogling, or Bobbing.

You may uſe all ſorts of Baits when you Angle with a Float, but Ground Baits and Paſtes are moſt uſual, ſometimes Flies for Roch within the Water, as the Ant-fly, *&c.*

§ 4. Let your Lead neither be ſo heavy, as to ſink the Cork or Float, nor ſo light, as not with the ſmalleſt touch to make the Cork dip under Water; the infallible Signal of a Bite, unleſs the Bait ſtop on Wood, Stones, or Weeds, or the Line be entangled on VVood, Stones, or VVeeds.

CHAP. XXIX.

Angling at top with a Worm.

§ 1. FOr this way you muſt uſe a Line longer than the Rod, and a Brandling, or a Gilt-tail-worm; and your Line is to be

without Float or Lead. You muſt draw your Bait up and down the Stream, at top of the Water, as you do a Cod-bait for Trout: In a clear Water and Day, perhaps you may take more Trouts and Salmon Smelts than otherwiſe.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Night Angling.

§ 1. IN the Night uſually the beſt Trouts bite, and will riſe ordinarily in the ſtill deeps; but not ſo well in the Streams. And although the beſt and largeſt Trouts bite in the Night, (being afraid to ſtir, or range about in the Day time;) yet I account this way of Angling both unwholſom, unpleaſant, and very ungentiel, and to be uſed by none but Idle pouching Fellows. Therefore I ſhall ſay nothing of it, only deſcribe how to lay Night Hooks; which, if you live cloſe by a River ſide, or have a large Moat, or Pond at your own Houſe, will not be unpleaſant, ſometimes to practiſe. But as for Damming, Groping, Spearing, Hanging, Twitcheling, Netting, or Firing by Night, I purpoſely omit them, and them eſteem to be uſed only by diſorderly and raſcally Fellows, for whom this

this little Treatiſe is not in the leaſt intended.

How to lay Night Hooks.

§ 2. Let him that would lay Night Hooks, procure a ſmall Cord 16 yards long, and thereunto at equal diſtances tye 5 or 6 Hemp Lines, of the thickneſs of the Trowling Line, about 18 inches long a-piece, (but ſo faſten or tye them to the Cord, as you may eaſily remove or put them to again;) to each of which whip a Hook, and Bait the ſame with a Minnow, Loach, or Bull-head, his Guill Fins cut off, or for want of them a ſmall Gudgeon, ſmall Roch, Seven Eyes, or ſmall Brood of Eels, or Beef, or Pith or Marrow in an Ox, or Cow's Back-bone; and if you Bait with any Fiſh, put the point of the Hook in at the Tail and out at the Mouth, the Head of the Fiſh reſting in the Hooks bent, and cover the point of the Hook with a ſmall Worm, and then to one end of the Cord faſten or tye a Stone, or a Lead weight about 2 pounds in weight; and throw it croſs the River in ſome ſtill deep, or at the tail or ſide of a Stream that's deep; and the other end faſten to ſome Bough or Stick, on the Water bank you ſtand on; and in the Morning you'll not fail to find Fiſh caught. Some put their Hemp Line through a great Needle, and put the Needles point in at the Fiſhes Mouth they Bait with,

without Float or Lead. You muſt draw your Bait up and down the Stream, at top of the Water, as you do a Cod-bait for Trout: In a clear Water and Day, perhaps you may take more Trouts and Salmon Smelts than otherwiſe.

CHAP. XXX.

Of Night Angling.

§ 1. IN the Night uſually the beſt Trouts bite, and will riſe ordinarily in the ſtill deeps; but not ſo well in the Streams. And although the beſt and largeſt Trouts bite in the Night, (being afraid to ſtir, or range about in the Day time;) yet I account this way of Angling both unwholſom, unpleaſant, and very ungentiel, and to be uſed by none but Idle pouching Fellows. Therefore I ſhall ſay nothing of it, only deſcribe how to lay Night Hooks; which, if you live cloſe by a River ſide, or have a large Moat, or Pond at your own Houſe, will not be unpleaſant, ſometimes to practiſe. But as for Damming, Groping, Spearing, Hanging, Twitcheling, Netting, or Firing by Night, I purpoſely omit them, and them eſteem to be uſed only by diſorderly and raſcally Fellows, for whom this

this little Treatiſe is not in the leaſt intended.

How to lay Night Hooks.

§ 2. Let him that would lay Night Hooks, procure a ſmall Cord 16 yards long, and thereunto at equal diſtances tye 5 or 6 Hemp Lines, of the thickneſs of the Trowling Line, about 18 inches long a-piece, (but ſo faſten or tye them to the Cord, as you may eaſily remove or put them to again;) to each of which whip a Hook, and Bait the ſame with a Minnow, Loach, or Bull-head, his Guill Fins cut off, or for want of them a ſmall Gudgeon, ſmall Roch, Seven Eyes, or ſmall Brood of Eels, or Beef, or Pith or Marrow in an Ox, or Cow's Back-bone; and if you Bait with any Fiſh, put the point of the Hook in at the Tail and out at the Mouth, the Head of the Fiſh reſting in the Hooks bent, and cover the point of the Hook with a ſmall Worm, and then to one end of the Cord faſten or tye a Stone, or a Lead weight about 2 pounds in weight; and throw it croſs the River in ſome ſtill deep, or at the tail or ſide of a Stream that's deep; and the other end faſten to ſome Bough or Stick, on the Water bank you ſtand on; and in the Morning you'll not fail to find Fiſh caught. Some put their Hemp Line through a great Needle, and put the Needles point in at the Fiſhes Mouth they Bait with,

and out at his Tail, and then let the Bait ſlip or fall down to the Hooks bent, the Head being downwards, and tye the Baits Tail to the Line with Thread, and then tye the top of the Hemp Line to the Cord, and ſo proceed as before, *&c.*

§ 3. This way you'll take Eels, Chubs, large Trouts, and Pike; but if you lay for Pike, let not your Bait go to the bottom, but with a Float keep the Bait about a foot from the bottom. For other Fiſh let the Bait touch the bottom, which Lead will cauſe. Your great Lob-worm is as good a Bait as any for Night Hooks, only if you lay them in Rivers, perhaps the ſmall Fiſh may pull your Bait off, and miſs being taken. Therefore it's beſt to uſe Minnows, Loaches, Bull-heads, ſmall Gudgeons, Bleaks, ſmall Roches, ſmall Daces, Seven Eyes, *&c.* in Rivers at Night Hooks.

CHAP. XXXI.

Obſervations on mid Water; and Ground Angling.

§ 1. WHen you Angle with running Line, (which is always to be without any Float) keep your Line ſo ſtraight, that it only permit your Lead to touch the Ground, and

and thereon roul (without any heſitation, or jogging) and no more: So in Float Angling, keep your Line as ſtraight as poſſible, ſuffering none of it to fall or lie in the Water, but what is inevitable, becauſe it as well ſcares Fiſh, as hinders the nimble jerk of the Rod when you ſtrike; but if, as ſometimes you cannot avoid, but ſome little will lie in the Water, then keep it in the Stream above the Float, by no means below it; and let your Bait always, either at Float or running Line, or any other way of Angling whatſoever, fall gently firſt into the Water, without any diſturbance, circling, or plunging in the Water, as little as you poſſibly can; and let as little of the Line as you can, fall with the Bait into the Water.

§ 2. When you Angle at Ground for ſmall Fiſh, as Gudgeons; or at mid Water for Roch and Bleak, put 2 or 3 Hooks on your Line, the one about 8 or 9 inches lower than the other, which you may do, by having 2 or 3 Gildards, or Links arm'd, or whip'd with Hooks, and tied at the lowermoſt Water Knot. Thus you may put on 2 or 3 different Baits, and you'll try with more eaſe and leſs time which is beſt taken; and often catch 2 or 3 at once. You may alſo have one Bait for ſuch as feed cloſe upon the Ground, as Gudgeon, Flounder, *&c.* And another for ſuch as feed a little higher, as Roch, Dace, *&c.* But if your Bait be to run on the Ground, (as for

Gudgeon)

Gudgeon) you must have a fair Sandy bottom, free from Wood, Stones and VVeeds: Your Lead is always to be on the lowermost link.

§ 3. Give all Fish time to take and swallow the Bait, especially Pike, Pearch, Gudgeon, and, in a muddy VVater, Trout, being not over hasty, unless you Angle with such tender Baits as will not endure nibling at, but must upon every touch be struck at; (as Pastes, Sheep's Blood, Flies, *&c.* which are taken away at the first pull of the Fish,) and therefore at first pull oblige you to try your Fortune. But the Roch generally nibleth at the Bait, and does not bite surely; but if he does bite surely, then it's commonly a very good one: Therefore strike at the first touch when you Angle for him.

§ 4. Angle for all sorts of Fish in the places they most frequent, and where their haunts are described to be, and at the proper seasons and times of biting, and when the Fish are in season, (all which you may be perfectly informed of, in the particular Chapter of each Fish;) and with suitable Tackle and Baits.

§ 5. When you Angle with Worm in a clear Water, sometimes put after the Worm, and on the point of the Hook a Cod-bait, Earth-bob, Clap-bait, or Gentle, or Wasp.

§ 6. When you use Pastes, or any very tender Baits, have a small Hook, quick Eye, nimble Rod,

Rod, and that a little ſtiff, and a ready Hand, or all will be loſt, both Bait and Fiſh; which muſt in ſuch caſe be ſtruck at, the very firſt touch or pull.

§ 7. Many when they Angle for Trouts, or Salmon Smelts in a clear Water, ſtrike as ſoon as they have bit; (which I commend) and the bite is eaſily perceiv'd by the motion of the Rods point, or Line.

§ 8. When you Angle at Ground for Salmons, put 2 or 3 Garden-worms well ſcoured on your Hook at once, and diſpoſe your ſelf as when you Angle at Ground for a Trout.

§ 9. If you Angle for Pearch or Trout, and catch Minnows, be aſſured that neither Pearch or Trouts are there, becauſe they are great devourers of Minnows and ſmall Fiſh.

§ 10. Whenever you Angle, either at mid Water or Ground, and have bit, be ſure you ſtrike gently and ſtraight upwards, if poſſibly you can, which you may eaſily do, if you be not obſtructed by having Wood, or Trees over you.

§ 11. Uſe not a great Hook for a ſmall Bait, nor a ſmall Hook for a great Bait.

§ 12. The running Line is uſed only for Trouts, Graylings and Salmon Smelts; and ſome uſe it for Gudgeons, and the running Line without any Float thereon; and about half length of Rod, is proper only for Streams and quick running Waters, and not for ſlow and mild Rivers, whoſe current is not ſwift.

§ 13. When-

§ 13. Whenever you Angle with the running Line, (which is always to be without any Float on it) with VVorms in a clear VVater, the VVorm ought to be a Guilt-tail, Marſh-worm, or ſmall Brandling well ſcoured, and one only to be on the Hook at a time; and your Bait is always to be caſt up the River and Stream, and kept in a gentle motion, by drawing your Bait towards you, and without the Leads faſtning or jogging on the bottom, although it muſt touch the bottom; having 1, or 2 at moſt, ſmall Pellets for your Plumbs, and thoſe not too heavy, but ſo as may be carried eaſily with the current of the VVater.

§ 14. When you Angle with running Line and VVorm, either in a muddy or clear VVater, let your Bait be always in a gentle motion, your Lead or Plumb ſeldom or not at all ſticking, or faſtning on the bottom; and when your Line is run as far as the Rod will permit it, and to its utmoſt extent, then draw it out gently, and not haſtily, and you'll often have a Trout take the Bait at its riſing from the Ground.

§ 15. When you Angle in a very Stony River that's clear, with the running Line, the Stones are apt to rub the ſmall Pellet, or Lead Plumb bright, and that ſcares away Fiſh: Therefore, when it does ſo, put on other Lead that is black, and take away the former.

§ 16. *Vid. chap.* 7. § 25. VVhenever you Angle

Angle for Barbel, Carp, Tench, Bream, Pearch, Gudgeon, Ruff and Flounder, uſe a Float and Lead at your Line. The like do for Roch, Dace and Bleak, if you Angle for them within VVater, and not at top with a Fly.

CHAP. XXXII.

Angling with a Ledger-bait.

§ 1. SOme perſons (eſpecially when tired, and mindful to reſt their wearied Limbs) betake themſelves to Angle with a Ledger-bait, which is, when a Bait always reſts in one fixed or certain place; and is ſo called in oppoſition to other Baits, that are always walking or in motion, thence called walking Baits. The manner of the Ledger-bait is thus.

§ 2. Take off your Cork from your Float Line, it being Leaded as uſually; and within half a yard of the top of the Line, wrap about it a thin Plate of Lead, 1 inch broad and an inch and a half long; then put your Line to your Rod, and Bait your Hook, and caſt the ſame into a very gentle Stream, or ſtill ſlow draught, and there let the Bait ſink, and reſt

reſt on the bottom: You either firmly holding the Rod, or ſticking the thick end thereof in the Rivers Bank, and either ſtanding or ſitting by it, you will perceive, by the motion of the Lead on the Lines top, when you have bit. This way you may Angle for all ſorts of Fiſh whatſoever, eſpecially the Chub and Eel. Let Ledger-baits for the Pike be always kept, at leaſt, a foot from the bottom, by the help of a Float.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Treats of Natural Fly-Angling Dibbing.

§ 1. ANgling with the Natural Fly (which is call'd Dibbing, Dapeing, or Dibling) is firſt to be ſpoken to; and it will ſerve as an Introduction to Angling with the Artificial Fly.

§ 2. Dibbing is always performed on the very ſurface, or top of the Water, or ſometimes by permitting the Bait to ſink 2 or 3 inches into the Water, but that ſeldom, unleſs you join a Cod-bait, or Clap-bait with the Oak-fly, for Trout or Chub.

§ 3. This

§ 3. This Dibbing is performed with any ſort of Natural Fly, but principally with the Green-drake and Stone-fly, or with the Oak-fly and Cod-baits, or with Fern-fly, for about ten days in *May*, for a Trout, but the Fern-fly is good for the Chub all the Summer; or you may dib with Cod-baits, Clap-baits, Cankers, Palmers, Catterpillars, Graſs-hoppers their Legs and outmoſt Wings taken off, Oak-worm and Hawthorn-worm, or Grub, and ſometimes with an Artificial Green-drake or Stone-fly. Some often pull off the uppermoſt Wings of the Fern-fly, when they uſe it in Dibbing for a Trout.

§ 4. The Salmon Trout, Grayling, Bleak, Chub, Roch and Dace, are the only Fiſh that will take Flies, the four firſt take the Natural Fly no better than the Dub-fly, except in very hot, calm Weather, or in the Evening of a hot day, at which times it's moſt proper to dib; the reſt take Natural Flies either at top, or under, or within the Water, and ſometimes a Dub-fly, eſpecially if a Cod-bait, Oak-worm, Clap-bait or Gentle be joyned with it. The Dace takes Flies beſt at top of the Water, or within an inch thereof, but the Roch takes Flies beſt within the Water a foot or more deep ſometimes.

Dib-

Dibbing for Trout, or Grayling.

§ 5. Dibbing for Trout or Grayling is performed with a Line about half length of Rod, if the Air be ſtill, or with one almoſt as long as Rod, if there be a Wind to carry it from you (have four Hairs next Hook for Trouts, but five or ſix for the Chub) wherein always have the Fly play, or Fly on the very top of the Water before you, up and down the River, as the Wind ſerves; and Angle as near as you can to the Bank of the ſame ſide whereon you ſtand, although where you ſee a Fiſh riſe near you, you may guide your quick Fly over him, whether in the middle, or on the contrary ſide; and if you are pretty well out of ſight, either by kneeling or the interpoſition of a Bank or Buſh, you may almoſt be ſure to raiſe and take him too, if it be preſently done; the Fiſh will otherwiſe, peradventure, be removed to another place, if it be in the ſtill deeps, where he is always in motion, and roving up and down for prey, though in a Stream you may always almoſt, eſpecially if there be a good Stone near, find him in the ſame place. You may likewiſe dib with the Water-cricket, or Creeper, in the Streams, in the Month of *April*; above an inch of the Line (at moſt) is not to be ſuffered to touch the Water in Dibbing; therefore you may be ſtronger tackled; likewiſe in this kind of Angling

gling, you are to expect the biggeſt Fiſh, and wanting length to give him Line after he is ſtruck, you muſt be forced to tug for't; therefore your Line may be ſtronger.

I heard an Angler lately, highly commend a Dibbing Line made of white Virginal Wyre, the brittleneſs or ſtiffneſs of it being firſt allay'd and temper'd, by laying the ſame upon clear hot Coles of Fire, for ſome ſmall time, which will cauſe the Wyre to be more tough, and not ſo apt to ſnarl, or break.

How to bait the May-fly for Dibbing.

§ 6. The Green-drake and Stone-fly, all allow to be May-flies; therefore take one of them (for commonly two are uſed) and put the point of the Hook into the thickeſt part of his Body, under one of his Wings, run it directly through, and out at the other ſide, leaving him ſpitted croſs on the Hook, then taking the other, put him on after the ſame manner, but with his head the contrary way, in which poſture they will live on the Hook, and play with their Wings a quarter of an hour, and let them but juſt touch the ſuperficies or top of the Water; but if you dib with an Oak-fly and a Cod-bait, put the Oak-fly on length ways in under his Head, and out at his tail, and a Cod-bait on point of the Hook, and let them ſink a little into the Water, and they are a killing Bait, eſpecially in ſome Ri-

vers. And obſerve, that you may bait any other two Flies after the ſame manner; and let me inform you of this Secret, that if Fiſh will not very well take your Natural Stone-fly at Dibbing, then if you pull away his Wings, and Angle with him within the Water, about mid Water, or near the bottom, in a clear Water, as you ſometimes Angle with a Cod-bait, that Trouts, Salmon Smelts, *&c.* will very eagerly take it.

Dibbing for Chubs.

§ 7. In hot Weather, and in a clear Water, you'll find Chubs often floating near, or on the top of the Water, then get ſecretly behind ſome Tree or Buſh, ſtanding as free from motion as poſſible, let your Hook hang a foot ſhort of the Water, to the end you may reſt your Rod on ſome Buſh or Bough of a Tree, and the Chub in all probability will ſink down towards the bottom of the Water, at firſt ſight or ſhadow of the Rod, and would ſo do, if a Bird fly over him, yet preſently riſes to the top again, ſoaring there, till frighted by ſome ſhadow; look out the beſt, moving your Rod as gently as a Snail to that you intend to catch, let your Bait fall gently on the Water 5 or 6 inches before him, and he'll ſeldom refuſe the Bait. You may Angle thus with Catterpillars, Oak-worm, Aſh-fly and Cod-bait, or any Worm bred on Herbs, Plants or Trees, Clap-

bait,

bait, Crabtree-worm, Hawthorn-worm, young brood of Waſps, Hornets and Humble-bees, Fern-flies, Graſs-hopper, Beetles, Great Moth that flys abroad in Gardens in a Summers Evening, and hath a great head like an Owl, with whitiſh Wings, and a yellowiſh Body, Houſe-cricket, Black-bee, *&c.* Take off the Legs and uppermoſt Wings of the Black-bee, Beetle, Graſs-hopper or Cricket, ſometimes when you uſe them; do the like to the Fern-fly ſometimes; and have two or three ſorts of Baits on the Hook at once, as a Fern-fly, Clap-bait and Waſp; and if you be on the ſide of a Stream when you Angle, let the Bait ſink a foot or 2, and he'll often take it within Water.

Rules for Dibbing.

§ 1. You muſt always Dib in a clear Water, and on the ſurface or top thereof, and you are neither to have Lead or Float on the Line; a hot, calm day, or in the Evening of a hot day, is the moſt proper time, and in ſtill deeps, rather than Streams, but ſometimes in Streams or ſides thereof, when the Water is clearing after a Flood eſpecially. You may dib with the Green-drake both in Streams and ſtills, all hours of the day; but the Stone-fly is moſt proper for the Streams only, and that early and late, and not in the mid time of the day: But if there be a whiſtling Wind in the Evening, Dib in the ſtill deeps with an Artificial

Stone-fly, where and when it will murder, and the beſt Fiſh then and there riſe; no matter how late, ſo you can ſee the Fly. Sometimes you may pull off the Wings of the Stone-fly, and Angle within Water with it, and it will be ſometimes taken better than the Stone-fly with Wings on, eſpecially in Streams near bottom.

§ 2. When you bait any ſort of Fly, let your Fingers be dry, and not wet or moiſt, leſt you ſpoil the Fly, eſpecially if tender.

§ 3. Keep out of ſight, if poſſible; for to fiſh fine and far off, is the great Rule in all manner of Fly-Angling; for if a Fiſh be coming towards a Fly, and perceive one, he'll turn ſhort; therefore keep your Fly gently moving on the top of the Water, as if it were alive, your ſelf out of ſight.

§ 4. When you Dib for Chub, Roch, Dace, move not the Fly ſwiftly, when you ſee the Fiſh coming towards it, but rather after one or two ſhort and ſlow Removes, ſuffer the Fly to glide gently with the Current, towards the Fiſh, or if in a ſtanding or very ſlow Water, draw the Fly ſlowly, not directly upon him, but ſloping and ſideways by him, which will make him more eager, leſt it eſcape him; for if you move it nimbly and quick, they will not (being Fiſh of ſlow motion) follow as the Trout will.

§ 5. When Chub, Roch and Dace ſhew themſelves on the top of the Water, on a Sun-

.ſhine

ſhine day, they are eaſily caught with Baits proper for them; and you may almoſt chooſe from amongſt them which you pleaſe to take. Roch takes Flies beſt within the Water, but Dace on the top. Chub, Roch and Dace will ſometimes take an Artificial Fly, but they take it better, if you put a Cod-bait, Earth-bob, Clap-bait or Gentle at point of the Hook, or an Oak-worm, Hawthorn-worm, Cole-wort-worm, or a Cabbage-worm. The Oak-worm, Hawthorn-worm, *&c.* is full as good on the top of the Water, as under, or than the Fly it ſelf, and more deſired by them.

§ 7. Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts will take an Artificial-fly very well at Dib-bing; perticularly beſt the Green-drake, and likewiſe the Stone-fly, early or late in the Evening; and if you could but hit the colour of the Oak-fly aright, and join a Cod-bait, either Natural or Artificial, there would be no great need of the Natural Oak-fly. If you dib for Salmon Smelts, Chub, Roch, or Dace with the Dub-fly, put on a Cod-bait, Clap-bait, VVaſp, or Gentle at point of the Hook.

§ 8. In a calm, you will not have ſo much Sport even with Dibbing, as in a whiſtling gale of Wind, both becauſe you then are not ſo eaſily diſcovered by the Fiſh, and alſo then but few Flies can lie on the VVater; for where they have ſo much choice, they will not be ſo eager and forward to riſe at a Bait,

that both the ſhadow of your Rod, Body, nay very Line, in a hot, calm Day, will, in ſpite of your beſt caution, render ſuſpected to them; but even then in the ſwift Streams with the Green-drake, or Stone-fly, or other Natural-fly proper for the River, Seaſon and Fiſh you dib for: By ſitting patiently behind a Buſh you may do execution.

§ 9. All Fiſh take the Fly, ſometimes beſt at top of the VVater, at another time much better a little under the ſuperficies of the VVater. Therefore, if they will not riſe at the top, try them a little under; but Chub and Roch will frequently take the Fly within VVater, and the Dace at the top of the VVater, or within an inch or 2 of it.

§ 10. Fiſh never eagerly riſe at any Fly, until that kind come to the Rivers ſide, which all Flies do before they die, to moiſten their Bodies and Wings, and from the Buſhes and Herbs skip and play upon the VVater, where they are ſnapt up by the Fiſh.

§ 11. To know what Flies Fiſh take, beat on the Buſhes on the Rivers Bank, and ſee what Fly falls, and Fiſh take beſt, and that uſe, *vid. cap.* 7. § 11. *cap.* 4. § 35.

§ 12. You may Dibble with the Oak-fly, Oak-worm, Fern-fly, (for Trouts only about 10 Days in ſome part of *May*, and ſometimes take of the Fern-flies uppermoſt Wings; but uſe the Fern-fly for Chub all the Summer;) Green-drake, Stone-fly, Graſhopper, Sharn-

bud

bud and Graſhopper, Oak-fly; and thereunto put on point of the Hook a Cod-bait, or Clap-bait, or any other Fly proper for the River, Seaſon and Fiſh. Your Line being about 2 yards long, ſtanding behind a Tree or Buſh, or over any deep hole where the Trout, or Fiſhes hold is; and make the Bait ſtir, or move up and down on the top of the VVater, as if it were alive; ſtill keeping your ſelf out of ſight. And if there be Trouts, in a hot Day, or eſpecially in the Evening of a hot Day, you may have Sport.

§ 13. You may Angle with the Oak-worm, Hawthorn-worm, Cod-bait, or Clap-bait at top of the VVater, ſometimes as a Dub-fly, if you ſet on the ſhank of the Hook when you whip it, about a Straws breadth from its Head, a Hogs Briſtle as is directed for Cod-bait, *chap.* 4. § 13, and at the Head of the Hook a pair of Artificial Wings.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Treats of Artificial Fly-Angling.

NOw I ſhall treat of Artificial, Dub-fly, or Caſt-fly Angling, (for ſo it's ſtiled in ſeveral places:) And herein I find no ſmall

difficulty by written directions, perfectly (although I ſhall attempt it) to teach any (though as ingenious as may be) how to make an Artificial, or Dub-fly. Therefore the beſt and readieſt way is, to procure ſome skilful Fly-Angler to let you ſee one made; and by obſerving the following Rules, and then your own Experience and Obſervations, in a ſhort time will make you a perfect Artiſt. The great difficulty is, to obtain the right colour of the Fly, Fiſh, at the inſtant of your Angling, then take, which none can make a a general deſcription of, becauſe ſeveral Rivers and Soils produce ſeveral and divers Flies; as the Boggy have one ſort particular to them, the Clay, Gravelly and Mountainous Country and Rivers others; and the Mellow light Soil different from them all, but much earlier in ſome places and Rivers than others: Nay, in *Wales*, and in ſome other Countries, there are peculiar Flies proper to the particular place and Country. And my own Experience has abundantly ſatisfied me, that almoſt in every River the Flies vary in Colour, Kind, Shape, or Proportion; and that in all places the ſame ſort of Flies are taken, much earlier in in ſome Rivers and Years than others; nay, in the very ſame River and Year, I have known the Stone-fly taken a Month, or more earlier at 5 or 6 Miles diſtance lower, than higher up the ſame River. For thoſe very Flies that uſe to appear about, and on the VVater in one Month

of

of the Year, may the ſucceeding Year come almoſt a Month ſooner, or later, as the ſame Year proves colder or hotter; for Sun-ſhiny weather and warm Springs brings them earlier, but in colder weather they are later.

Sometimes Fiſh change their Fly (but not uſually) once or twice in one Day, but ordinarily they ſeek not for another ſort of Fly, till they have for ſome Days even glutted themſelves with a former kind, which is commonly when thoſe Flies are near death, and ready to go out. For Fiſh contemn the Flies until they be at the beſt; and have the greateſt appetite for them when moſt plentiful; and when that ſort grow old and decay, and another kind, or ſort cometh in abundantly, then they change.

Therefore the Angler having obſerved and found the Fly Fiſh moſt affect, at the very preſent time, let him make one as like it as poſſibly he can in Colour, Shape and Proportion of Body and Wings; and for his better imitation, let him lay the Natural Fly before him, and try how near Art can come unto, or diſſemble Nature, by an equal Symmetry and Commixture of Colours. The better to attain, which end, the Angler muſt always have in readineſs a large Magazine Bag, or Budget, plentifully furniſhed with the following materials. *Viz.*

Bears

Bears Hair.

§ 1. Bears Hair of diverſe Colours and Shades, are the moſt excellent Dubbing; as Gray, Dun, light Coloured, ſad Coloured, and bright ſhining Bears Hair, and bright Brown Bears Hair.

Camels Hair.

§ 2. Camels Hair ſad, light, and of a middle, or indifferent Colour.

Badgers Hair.

§ 3. Badgers Skin Hair, that is, the Brownish ſoft Fur, which is on ſome part of the Badgers Skin, is very good Dubbing, after the Skin is tewed in the Skinners Lime-pits, and ſo is the Blackiſh.

Spaniels Hair.

§ 4. Spaniels ſoft Fur and Hair of diverſe Colours, and parts of the Spaniel, as on the Ear, *&c.* as Brown, ſad Brown, light Brown, Blackiſh, and perfect Black.

Dogs

Dogs Hair.

§ 5. Get the like Colours from a VVater Dog, and from a long-coated Cur, and a ſmooth-coated Cur.

Hogs Down.

§ 6. Be ſure to procure from Butchers, or others, Black, Red, Whitiſh and Sanded Hogs Down, ſuch as is combed from the Roots of the Hair, or Briſtles of Hogs of thoſe Colours, or of ſpots on them of thoſe Colours. And you may get the Dyer to dye the White Hogs Down of any Colour you judge convenient, and it's excellent; becauſe it both ſhines well, and is ſtiff, and proper for the Water, and lively.

Sheeps Wooll.

§ 7. Sheeps Wooll of all colours both Natural and Artificial, get the courſeſt Sheeps Wooll, and the Dyer (eſpecially the Silk-Dyer) will make it you of any colour you judge convenient, and ſuch as will beſt abide in the Water; for all your colours ſhould have that property.

Mohairs.

Mohairs.

§ 8. Mohairs of all colours, eſpecially the following, *viz.* Black, Blew, Purple, White, Violet coloured, Iſabella, and Philomot, coloured Mohairs, Yellow, Tawny, *&c.*

Cows Hair.

§ 9. Get ſoft Hair and Furs from the Flanks and other ſoft parts of a Black Cow, Red Cow, and Brended Cow, and of theſe have Brown, ſad Brown, light Brown, and perfect Black Hair and Furs.

Camlets.

§ 10. Get pieces of Camlets both Hair and Worſted of all colours, eſpecially the following, *viz.* Blew, Yellow, Dun, Brown, dark Brown, light Brown, Red, Violet, Purple, Black, dark Brown, ſhining Camlet, dark Violet, Horſe-Fleſh, Pink and Orange colour'd.

Abortive Colts, and Calves Hair.

§ 11. Reſort to a Skinners Lime-pit, and there get Hair of various colours, and you may get moſt excellent Dubbing of Caſtling Skins of Calves, and Colts that are Tewed; and ſeveral colours and ſhades of one Skin:

ſo

ſo of Cuſhions made of ſuch Skins that have been neatly Tewed in the Skinners Lime-pit: ſo of Abortive Skins of Colts and Calves, at Skinners Lime-pits Tewed, *&c.*

Furs.

§ 12. Furs of the enſuing Animals, *viz.* Furs of Squirrels, and Squirrels-Tail, Black Cats-Tail, Yellow dun Cat, Hares Neck Fern colour, White Weaſels-Tail, Mole, Black Rabbet, Yellow Rabbet, Down of a Fox Cub, Aſh coloured at the Roots, Fur of an Old Fox, Fur of an Old Otter, and Fur of an Otter Cub, Blackiſh and Brown ſoft Fur, and Hair of a Badgers Skin, that has been Tewed in a Skinners Lime-pit, Marterns Yellow Fur, Filmerts Fur, Ferrets Fur.

Hackles.

§ 13. Hackles (which are Feathers about a Cock or Capons Neck, and ſuch as hanging down on each ſide, next a Cock or Capons Tail) of all colours, as the Red, Dun, Yellowiſh, White Orange coloured, and perfect Black, theſe are of eſpecial uſe to make the Palmerfly, or Inſect called by ſome Wool-beds.

Feathers.

Feathers.

§ 14. Feathers of all ſort of Fowls, and of all colours, as Feathers on the Back, and other parts of the wild Mallard, or Drake, and Feathers of a Partridge, and of a Partridge-Tail, and Feathers of a Brown Hen, Throſtle-wing, and Feathers got from the Quills and Pens of the wings of Shepſtares, Stares or Starling, Fieldfare, and Throſtle. The Peacocks Herle, Feathers of a Herons Neck, the top or Cop of a Plover, or Lapwing, which will make the Black Gnat, the Black Feather of an Oſtridge or Eſtridge, and thoſe of various Dyed colours, which Children and others wear in Caps, Feathers from Quills in a Blackbirds Wing and Tail, the Black Down of a Water-coot, and Feathers of all other Colours and Birds, *&c.*

Cadows, and Blanckets.

§ 15. Of Outlandiſh Cadows, and Blanckets of diverſe colours, are very often got excellent Dubbing, ſo of Cuſhions made of Abortive Skins of Colts, and Calves, and of Badgers Skins Tewed, *&c.*

Silks.

§ 16. Silk of all colours, ſmall, but very ſtrong.

Wire,

Wire, and Twiſt.

§ 17. Silver-Twiſt, Gold-Twiſt, Silver-Wire.
§ 18. A ſharp and neat pair of Sciſſars.

How to make a Dub-Fly.

Theſe materials being ready, you may make your Fly after the following manner, being the moſt exact way of all others and it's performed thus, *viz.* You are firſt to hold the Hook faſt betwixt the fore Finger and Thumb of your left Hand, with the back of the ſhank upwards, and the point towards your Fingers end; then take a ſtrong ſmall Silk of the colour of the Fly you intend to make, (or at leaſt of the moſt predominant colour of the Fly, if it be of diverſe colours) wax it well with Wax of the ſame colour too, (to which end you are always to have Wax of all colours about you) and draw it betwixt your Finger, and Thumb, to the head of the ſhank, and then whip it twice or thrice about the bare Hook, which, you muſt know, is done, both to prevent ſlipping, and alſo that the ſhank of the Hook may not cut the Hairs of your Tought, Gildard or Line; (which ſometimes it will otherwiſe do) which being done, take your Line, and draw it likewiſe betwixt your Finger and Thumb, holding the Hook ſo faſt, as only to ſuffer it to paſs by, until you have the

the knot of your Tought almoſt to the middle of the ſhank of your Hook, on the inſide of it, then whip your Silk twice or thrice about both Hook and Line, as hard as the ſtrength of the Silk will permit, which being done, ſtrip the Feather for the Wings, proportionable to the bigneſs of your Fly, placing that ſide downwards, which grew uppermoſt before, upon the back of the Hook, leaving ſo much only as to ſerve for the length of the Wing of the point of the Plume, lying revers'd from the end of the ſhank upwards, then whip your Silk twice or thrice about the Root-end of the Feather, Hook and Tought, which being done, clip off the root-end of the Feather cloſe by the arming or whipping, and then whip the Silk faſt and firm about the Hook and Tought, until you come to the bend of the Hook, but not further (as ſome do, and thereby make a very unhandſom, unnatural and ſhapeleſs Fly) which being done, cut away the end of the Tought or Gildard, and faſten it, and then take your Dubbing which is to make the body of your Fly, as much as you think convenient, and holding it lightly with your Hook, betwixt the Finger and Thumb of your left Hand, take your Silk with the Right, and twiſting it betwixt the Finger and Thumb of that Hand, the Dubbing will ſpin it ſelf about the Silk, which, when it has done, whip it about the armed Hook backward, till you come to the ſetting on of the Wings, and then take the Feather

ther for the Wings, and divide it equally into two parts, and turn them back towards the bend of the Hook, the one on the one ſide, and the other on the other of the ſhank, holding them faſt in that poſture betwixt the Forefinger and Thumb of your left Hand, which done, warp them ſo down, as to ſtand, and ſlope towards the bend of the Hook, and having warpt up to the end of the ſhank, hold the Fly faſt betwixt the Finger and Thumb of your left Hand, and then take the Silk betwixt the Finger and Thumb of your right Hand, and where the warping ends, pinch or nip it with your Thumb-nail againſt your Finger, and ſtrip away the remainder of your dubbing from the Silk, and then with the bare Silk whip it once or twice about; make the Wings to ſtand in due order, faſten, and cut it off; after which, with the point of a Needle, raiſe up the dubbing gently from the warp, twitch or clip off the ſuperfluous Hairs of your dubbing, leave the Wings of an equal length (your Fly will never elſe ſwim true) and the work is done. Thus you are to make the Dub-fly: But a Palmer-fly, or Wool-bed is made of a Capon, or Cocks Hackle, twirled on Silk, and warp'd about the Hook, and either with, or without any Wings, and ſometimes a little dubbing under the Hackle.

So that you ſee, by this particular Direction, That you are Firſt, to hold your Hook and Line; Secondly, There are to be two or

three whips about the bare Hook; Thirdly, Joyn the Hook and Line; Fourthly, Put on your Wings; Fifthly, Twirle and lap on your dubbing; Sixthly, Work it up towards the head; Seventhly, Part the Wings; Eighthly, Nip off the ſuperfluous dubbing from the Silk; Ninthly, Faſten; Tenthly, Trim and adjuſt the Fly.

Rules for Dub-flies, and its Angling.

§ 1. In making Dub-flies, chiefly obſerve and imitate the Belly of the Fly, for that colour Fiſh moſt take notice of, as being moſt in their Eye; and let the Wings of the Fly always be of an equal length, elſe the Fly will not ſwim right and true.

§ 2. VVhen you try how to fit the colour of the Fly, wet the dubbing, leſt you be miſtaken; for, although, when dry, they exactly ſuit the colour of the Fly; yet the VVater alters moſt colours, and will make them brighter, or darker.

§ 3. Always make your Dub-flies on a Sunſhine Day; and to know the exact colour of your dubbing, hold the ſame betwixt your Eye and the Sun, and you'll far better diſcover the true colour of the dubbing, than only by looking on it in the Hand, in the Houſe, dark Day, or a ſhady Place.

§ 4. Never let the Tail of your Dub-fly deſcend lower, than until you come to the bend

bend of the Hook, and not into the Hooks bent, as they generally do in the *South*, and ſo make very inartificial, ſhapeleſs, and unnatural Flies.

§ 5. When Trouts often ſhew themſelves at your Fly, and yet do not take it, be aſſured that either the Day, or Water is improper for Fly-Angling; or, which is far more probable, your Dub-fly is not of the right colour, or ſhape they then covet.

§ 6. Some always adviſe to dub with Silk of the moſt predominant colour of the Fly; but we generally dub Duns with Yellow Silk, and our Browns with Red Silk, and at *September* with Violet Silk, or Horſe-fleſh coloured-Silk.

7. Flies made of the Hairs of Bears, Hogs, Squirrels Tail, Camels, Dogs, Foxes, Badgers, Otters, Ferrets, Cows, Calves Skins tewed; abortive Calves and Colts Skins tewed, Weaſels, Outlandiſh Cadows, *&c.* are more natural, lively, and keep colour better in the Water than Flies made of Crewels, and many ſort of Worſted ſtuffs, which are of a dead and dull colour in the Water, therefore to be eſhewed, unleſs you mingle Hair of Bairs, or Hogs therewith.

§ 8. The Feather got from the Quill of a Shepſtare, Stare, or Starlings Wings, is the beſt Feather generally to uſe for Dub-fly Wings; then next is the Feathers got from the Quills of the Wings of Throſtles, Fieldfares, Black-birds, and the Feathers got on

the Back of the wild Mallard, or Drake, and not from the tame one, is uſed by ſome for moſt ſort of Flies. If you deſire a Black Wing, then the ſaid Feather of a Black-bird, if a Red Wing, then Feathers got out of a Partridge Tail, if a Brown Wing, then Feathers of the ſaid Throſtle, if a Greeniſh Wing, then Feathers from a Lapwing, or Plover: But however, ſome uſe only Feathers of Shepſtares Quills, got out of the Wings thereof, for almoſt all ſort of Flies, and affirm there are great variety of ſhades in the Shepſtares Wings, ſome being ſadder, others lighter colour'd.

§ 9. The Palmer-fly, Gold Hackle, Silver Hackle, great Dun, dark Brown, early bright Brown, later bright Brown, little whirling Dun, Thorn-tree-fly, great whirling Dun, Yellow Dun, Dun-cut, Green Drake, Stone-fly, Black *May*-fly, Yellow *May*-fly, Badger-fly, Ant-fly, Camlet-fly, and Grey Midge are Flies ſufficient to be furniſhed with. The Hackles and the Stone-fly, being the very ground of all Fly-Angling.

I know an Excellent Fly-Angler, that only uſes the 3 before-mentioned Hackles, and the great Dun, and theſe following Flies all the Year, *viz.* Yellow Dun, made of Dun Bears Hair, and Yellow Marterns Fur, Wings of a Shepſtares Quill Feather, and dub'd with Yellow Silk. And another Fly made of Yellow Marterns Fur, Dun Bares Hair, and Sanded

Hogs

Hogs Down, dub'd with Yellow Silk, and the Wings of the Feather of a Shepſtares Quill, got out of the Wing. Another Fly made of Dun Bares Hair, Blackiſh Hogs Down, and Yellow Marterns Fur. And another Fly made of Dun Bears Hair, Yellow Marterns Fur, Sanded Hogs Down, and Black Hogs Down. Another Fly made of Dun Bears Hair, Camels Hair, and Yellow of a Blanket. And all theſe three laſt mentioned Flies, are dub'd with Yellowiſh Silk, and the Wings of Feathers of a Shepſtares Wings: Beſides the Green Drake and Stone-fly, all which are but 10 in Number.

And the ſame Angler affirms, That in caſe you Angle with a Dub-fly, made and mix'd of 2, or 3 colours of Dubbing all together, that if any one colour, of the ſaid mixture, reſemble the true colour of the Natural Fly Fiſh then take, that Trouts, and Salmon Smelts, will take the ſame Dub-fly very well.

§ 10. When you Angle with Dub-fly, it muſt be in Rivers either clear, or almoſt clear after Rain, or in a Mooriſh River, diſcoloured by Moſs or Bogs, or elſe in a dark, gloomy, cloudy Day, when a gentle gale of Wind moves the Water; but if the Wind be high, yet, ſo as you may guide your Tools, they will riſe well in the plain deeps, and then and there you'll commonly kill the beſt Fiſh; but if the Wind be little, or

none at all, you muſt Angle in the ſwift Streams.

§ 11. Keep your Dub-fly in continual motion, though the Water, or Day be Dark, or Wind blow; otherwiſe the Fiſh will diſcern, and refuſe it.

§ 12. If the Water be clear and low, uſe a ſmall bodied Fly with ſlender Wings.

§ 13. When you Angle in Rivers diſcoloured a-little by Rain, or paſſing through Moſſes or Bogs, or if the Water be dark or very full, uſe a larger bodied Fly than ordinary.

§ 14. If the Day be clear, uſe a light coloured Fly with ſlender Body and Wings.

§ 15. In dark Weather, as well as dark Water, the Fly muſt be dark.

§ 16. As Summer approaches, and VVater clears, Flies generally are made ſmaller, and brighter.

§ 17. VVhen you Angle with Dub-fly, your Rod ſhould be no leſs than 5 yards and a half long, and the Line ſhould be about 7 yards and half long, unleſs the VVater be encumbred with VVood or Trees; and when the VVater banks are free from VVood, or Trees, ſome uſe a Line almoſt twice length of the Rod.

§ 18. Some adviſe for every Fly to have 3, one of a lighter colour, another ſadder, and a third the exact colour of the Natural Fly; by which means, you may the better adapt them to the colour of the VVater, and

Sky:

Sky: But in my thoughts, if you can dub a Fly of the exact colour of the Natural Fly, Fiſh at that inſtant take, it's ſufficient; and the other 2 extreams ſuperfluous.

§ 19. Fiſh rarely take the Dub-fly, in any ſlow River whoſe bottom or ground is ſlime or mud. For in great droughts Fiſh bite little in any River, but nothing in ſlimy Rivers, whoſe mud is not cool'd by the ſwiftneſs of the current, but in ſandy, gravelly, pebly, ſtony, or rapid Rivers you may catch Fiſh at that time.

§ 20. You muſt have a quick Eye, a nimble Rod and Hand, and ſtrike with the riſing of the Fiſh, or they find their miſtake, and put out the Hook again; others are of opinion never to offer to ſtrike a great Fiſh, if he do not ſtrike himſelf, till firſt you ſee him turn his Head, after he has taken the Fly, and then ſay they, the Tackle will not ſtrain in ſtriking, if moderately you ſtrike.

§ 21. VVhen you caſt the Fly, wave the Rod with a ſmall circumference, about your Head, elſe the Fly will be very apt to jerk, and ſnap off, and thereby your Fly loſt.

§ 22. VVhen you ſee a Trout riſe, caſt the Fly behind him, and then gently draw it over his Head, and if of the right colour, and you ſcare him not, he's your own.

§ 23. In caſting the Fly, do it always before you, ſo that the Fly may firſt fall upon the VVater (otherwiſe it will ſcare the Fiſh)

and as little of the Line with it as poſſible, and without circling the VVater, though, if the VVind be ſtiff, you will then be compel'd to drown a great part of the Line, to keep the Fly in the VVater; and endeavour to have the VVind on your Back, and the Sun in your Face, if you can, but the windings and turnings of the River will render that impoſſible.

§ 24. VVhen you Angle in ſlow Rivers, or ſtill Places with the Dub-fly, caſt your Fly over croſs the River, and let it ſink a-little in the VVater, and draw him gently back again, ſo as you break not the VVater, or raiſe any circles, or motions thereon, and let the current of the River carry the Fly gently down with the Stream; and this is the beſt way in ſlow, ſlimy bottom'd Rivers for the Dub-fly, otherwiſe your Fly is to ſwim on the top.

§ 25. Stand always as far off the Rivers ſide, as the Rod and Line will give leave. For to fiſh fine, and far off, is the great Rule in Fly-Angling.

§ 26. In froſt and ſnow, or exceſſive cold weather in the Spring, Angle with the ſmalleſt Gnats, Browns, and Duns you can make.

§ 27. For ſtony, clear, cryſtalline Rivers, Flies generally are made with ſlender Body and VVings, but in dark, diſcoloured, and full VVaters, the contrary.

§ 28. VVhen you know not certainly what

what Fly is taken, or cannot ſee Fiſh riſe, then put on a ſmall Hackle if the Water be clear, but bigger if ſomething dark, until you have taken one, then order the matter as you are directed, *Cap.* 7. § 11.

29. Some Perſons for ſome Rivers generally make their Flies of a Cock or Capons Feather or Hackle, of diverſe colours, which will ſerve all the Spring eſpecially, and moſt of Summer, if you but vary and ſuit the colour of the Silk to the Hackle you Dub with, as for a Dun Hackle, Yellow Silk; a Black Hackle, Sky or Azur-coloured Silk; a Brown or Red Hackle, Red-coloured Silk, *&c.* and you may make them either with or without Wings, but better with Wings in moſt Rivers, and theſe do truly repreſent the inſect call'd a Palmer-worm, or (by others) Wooll-beds whoſe external parts are arm'd or adorn'd with a kind of Wooll, or Hair, and at all times of the Year drop into the Water, from the adjacent Buſhes and Trees. And with theſe you may generally catch Fiſh at any ſeaſonable time, eſpecially on windy days, and the Spring.

§ 30. In all ſort of Flies whatever you make, mingle with your Dubbing (unleſs the Fly be made of Feathers and Silk only) more or leſs of Bears Hair, Hogs Down, or Yellow Fur of a Martern; but Bears Hair eſpecially if you have it.

§ 31. That the Angler may go dry on his

Feet

Feet, let him get a pair of ſlender Leather Boots to reach as high as his Knee, and before they are cut out, let the Currier very well Liquor them with this following Liquor, which experience has approved to be excellent for keeping out Water, *viz.* ℞ *Emplaſtri Diapalmæ*, and of *De minio compoſit.* Of each 2 Ounces, Hogs Greaſe rendred half a Pound; melt them together, keeping continual ſtirring it, and when uſed let it be warm, and afterwards as often as occaſion is; if you'll take pains you may Liquor your Shooes or Boots therewith.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of Artificial Fly-Angling, and particularly Dub-flies.

I Did once determine to have wholly omitted any particular Deſcription of Dub-flies, for the Reaſons already deliver'd in the beginning of the 34th. Chapter of this Book. Yet, notwithſtanding ſuch Reſolution, I think it not amiſs to inſert two Catalogues, that will ſerve as a Baſis for any perſon, with diſcreet Variations and Obſervations, to raiſe a Superſtructure for his own particular Country and Uſe, in any

part

part of *England*; and will afford no mean light to the perfect Underſtanding and Attainment of the Art of Dub-fly-Angling, which is as delightſome a way of Angling as any whatſoever, if the River, you frequent, be but plentifully ſtored with Fiſh; and herewith there is but little or no alteration of the Bait for the whole day, and you are not to uſe either Lead or Float, but the Fly is always to be on the very ſurface or top of the Water, and you are to Angle going down the River, and begin to caſt the Fly either from the head or ſide of the Stream or Water: And I will begin with *February*, that being early enough for any Gentleman to enter on this Recreation, by reaſon of the wetneſs and coldneſs of the Weather at that time: The firſt of *March* being commonly aſſoon as ever I begun to Angle, and *Michælmas* day or St. *Luke*'s day the time of the year I deſiſt from that Sport, and then I repair all the Angling Tackle, both Rods and Lines, that have been any ways damnified in the preceding Summers ſervice; and orderly diſpoſe of the ſame to be in a compleat readineſs the following Spring.

Dub-

Dub-flies for February.

Little Red Brown

§ 1. Is made of the Furr of the black ſpot of a Hog's Ear (becauſe there it's ſofteſt) warpt on with red Silk, Wings of the Male of a Mallard almoſt white.

Palmer-fly, or Plain Hackle

§ 2. Is made with a rough, black body, either of black Spaniels Fur, or the Whirl of an Oſtridge Feather, and the red Hackle of a Capon over all.

Silver Hackle

§ 3. Made with a black body alſo, Silver Twiſt over that, and a red Feather of all.

Great Hackle,

§ 4. The Body black, and wrapped with a red Feather of a Capon untrim'd, that is, the whole length of the Hackle ſtaring out (for ſometimes we barb the Hackle Feather ſhort all over, ſometimes barb it only a-little, and ſometimes barb it cloſe underneath) leaving the whole length of the Feather on the top,

or

or back of the Fly; which makes it ſwim better, and on a whirling round Water, kills great Fiſh.

Gold Hackle,

§ 5. The Body black, rib'd over with Gold Twiſt, and a red Feather over all, does great execution.

Great Dun,

§ 6. Made with dun Bears Hair, and the Wings of the grey Feather of a Mallard near unto his Tail, the very beſt Fly for this Month, and makes admirable Sport.

Great Blew Dun,

§ 7. Dubbing of the bottom of Bears Hair next to the Roots, mixt with a little Blew Camlet, the Wings of the dark Grey Feather of a Mallard.

Dark Brown,

§ 8. Dubbing of the Brown Hair of the Flank of a Brended Cow, and the Grey Feather of a Drake for Wings.

Theſe Hackles are ſome for one Water and Sky, and ſome for another, and accordingly the ſize and colour are alter'd, and uſe a ſmall

Hackle,

Hackle, if the Water be clear, or a bigger, if ſomething dark; and when you cannot know certainly in this Month or any other, what Fly is taken, put on a ſmall Hackle, if the Water be clear, but bigger, if ſomething dark, and the firſt Fiſh you take, proceed with him as you are directed, *Cap.* 7. §. 11.

Dub-flies for March.

Uſe all the ſame Hackles and Flies with *February*, but make them leſs.

Little Whirling Dun,

§ 1. Made of the bottom Fur of a Squirrels-Tail, and the Wings of the Grey Feather of a wild Drake or Mallard.

Early Bright Brown,

§ 2. Made either of the Brown of a Spaniel, or of the Hair of a Red Cows Flank with a Grey Wing.

Whitiſh Dun,

§ 3. Made of the Roots of Camels Hair, Wings of a wild Mallards Grey Feather.

Thorn-

Thorn-Tree-fly,

§ 4. Dubbing of an abſolute Black, mix'd with 8 or 10 Hairs of Iſabella coloured Mohair, the Body as little as can be made, Wings of a bright wild Mallards Feather; an admirable Fly, and in great repute for a killer.

Blew Dun.

§ 5. Comb the Neck of a Black Grey-hound with a ſmall Tooth Comb, and the Down that ſticks in its Teeth is a fine Blue, wherewith dub this Fly; the Wings can ſcarce be too White; and it's taken from the Tenth till the Twenty fourth.

Litte Black Gnat

§ 6. Is taken from the Tenth, until almoſt the end of this Month, made either of the Fur of a Black VVater Dog, or the Down of a young Black VVater Coot, the Wings of the Male of a wild Mallard, as White as may be, the Body as little as you can poſſibly make it, and the Wings as ſhort as the Body. Some make the Body of the cop, or top Feather on the Head of a Plover, or Lapwing.

Later

Later bright Brown

§ 7. Is taken from the Sixteenth, to the Tenth of *April*, Dubbing to be got out of a Skinners Lime-pits, and of the Hair of an abortive Calf, which the Lime will turn to be ſo bright, as to ſhine like Gold. Wings of the Feather of a Brown Hen is beſt.

Dub-flies for April.

All the ſame Hackles and Flies that are taken in *March*, will be taken in *April* alſo, with this diſtinction only, concerning the Flies, that all the Browns be lap'd with Red Silk, and the Duns with Yellow Silk.

Small bright Brown,

§ 1. Made of Spaniels Fur, with a light Grey Wing, in a bright Day and clear Water, is very well taken.

Little dark Brown,

§ 2. The Dubbing of dark Brown, and Violet Camlet mix'd, Grey Feather of a wild Mallard for Wings.

Great

Great whirling Dun.

§ 3. From the Twelfth of this Month, is taken all the Month through about mid time of the Day, and by fits, from thence to the end of *June*; and is one of the beſt Flies we have; it is commonly made of the Down of a Fox Cub, which is of an Aſh colour, at the Roots, next the Skin, and rib'd about with Yellow Silk, the Wings of the pale Grey Feather of a wild Mallard.

Violet-fly,

§ 4. From the Sixth to the Tenth of this Month is taken, made of a dark Violet Stuff, and a very little Dun Bears Hair mix'd therewith, wild Mallards Grey Feather for Wings.

Yellow Dun,

§ 5. Dubbing of Camels Hair, and Yellow Camlet, or Yellow Wooll of a Blanket, well mix'd, (and ſome add Bears Hair) and a White Grey Wing. Others dub it of Dun Hair of a Bear, and ſome Yellow Fur of a Martern mix'd therewith, and dub it with Yellow Silk, and the Wings of the Feather, got from the Quill of a Shepſtares Wing. And it's an excellent Fly both for *April* and *May*.

Horſe-Fleſh-fly

§ 6. Is taken beſt in an Evening, and kills beſt from 2 Hours before Sun-ſet until Twilight, and is taken the Month through. Dubbing of Blew Mohair with Pink coloured, and Red Tammy mix'd, a light coloured VVing, and a dark Brown Head. It begins to be taken beſt about the Twentieth of the Month.

Dub-flies for May.

All the ſame Hackles and Flies, the Hackles only brighter, and the Flies ſmaller, that are taken in *April*, will alſo be taken in *May*; likewiſe all Browns and Duns.

Next, follow 7 of the very prime Flies for *May*, and indeed of all the Year, eſpecially the Duncut, Green-drake and Stone fly; and then 9 of ſmall eſteem, in compariſon with the firſt 7, yet ſuch as will kill Fiſh too.

Dun-cut

§ 1. Is the firſt of the 7, its Dubbing is of Bears Dun Hair, with a little Blew and Yellow mix'd with it, a large Dun VVing, and 2 Horns at the Head, made of the Hair of a Squirrels Tail; and is a very killing Fly.

The

The next are 4 Flies which contend for the Title of *May*-fly, but the Green-drake, which is taken both in ſtreams and ſtills, and that at all Hours of the Day, whileſt in Seaſon, and the Stone-fly taken early and late, but not very well in the mid time of the Day, have the preheminence of the Black *May*-fly, and little Yellow *May*-fly, by the general vogue of Anglers.

Green-drake deſcribed.

§ 2. At full maturity his VVings ſtand high, and cloſed exact upon his Back, like the Butter-fly, and his motion in flying is the ſame, his Body is in ſome of a paler, in others of a darker Yellow (for they are not all exactly of a colour) rib'd with rows of Green, long, ſlender, and growing ſharp towards the Tail; at the end of which, he has three long, ſmall VVhisks, of a very dark colour, almoſt Black; and this Tail turns up towards his Back, like a Mallard, from whence he has his name of Green-drake.

Green-drakes ſeaſon, and Dubbing.

He comes in about mid *May*, and is taken untill *Midſummer* in Mountainous Stony Rivers; far earlier in others, and that at all Hours, as aforeſaid, as is made thus, *viz.* on a large Hook the Dubbing Camels Hair, bright Bears

Hair, the ſoft Down combed from a Hog's Briſtles, and yellow Camlet well mixt together, the Body long, and rib'd about with green Silk, or rather yellow Silk waxt with green Wax, the Whisks of the Tail of the long Hair of Sables, or Fitchet; and the Wings of the white-grey Feather of a wild Mallard dyed yellow, which is dyed thus: *Viz.*

Take the Root of a Barberry-Tree, and ſhave it, and put to it Wood-Ivi's, with as much Allum as a Wallnut, and boyl the Feathers in it with Rain-water, and they will be of a very fine and curious Yellow. You may try whether the inner Bark of a Crab-tree boyl'd with ſome Allum in Water, will not do the ſame, and make a fine Yellow; which I am inform'd it will, but never experienced it.

Stone-fly deſcribed.

§ 3. The Stone-fly lies under hollow Stones, at the Rivers ſide, his Body is long, and pretty thick, and as broad at the Tail almoſt as in the middle, his Colour of a very fine brown, rib'd with yellow, and much yellower on the Belly, than on the Back, he hath two or three Whisks alſo at the tag of his Tail, and two little Horns on his Head, his Wings, when full grown, are double, and flat down his Back, of the ſame colour, but rather darker than his Body, and longer than it, though he makes

but

but little uſe of them; for he rarely flies, though often ſwims and paddles with ſeveral Feet he has under his Belly, upon the Water without ſtirring a Wing; but the Drake will mount Steeple height into the Air, though he's found upon Flags and Graſs too, and indeed every where high and low near the River.

The Stone-fly's Seaſon and Dubbing.

The Stone-fly comes in about middle of *April*, and continues until the end of *June* or Midſummer; it's proper for Streams, rather than ſtills, and taken beſt early and late, but not ſo well at the mid time of the day; if there be a whiſtling Wind, then it may be taken in the deep ſtills of the River: It's a very killing Fly, and you may Angle with the Natural one within the Water at bottom, or near it, or at mid Water, if you pull away the Wings from the Body, and in that manner, it will ſometimes be better taken than one with Wings on. The Artificial Stone-fly is made of Bears dun Hair, with a little brown and yellow Camlet well mixt, but ſo placed, that the Fly may be more yellow on the Belly, and towards the Tail underneath, than in any other part, and you are to place two or three Hairs of a black Cats Beard on the top of the Hook, in the arming or whipping, ſo as to be turn'd up when you warp on your Dubbing, and to ſtand almoſt upright, and ſtairing one from

another: And note, that this Fly is to be rib'd with yellow Silk, and Wings long and very large, of the dark-grey Feather of the wild Mallard, or (which I intend to try) of the brown, ſoft Feather of a Kite, or rather of the Feather got out of the Wing of a Throſtle, or Feather of a Quill in a Throſtle-wing. Sometimes you may dibble with an Artificial Stone-fly, in the ſtill deeps, in an Evening, if any gentle gale of Wind or Breeze furl them.

Black May-fly

§ 4. Is the next May-fly made with a black body of the Whirl of an Oſtridge-feather, rib'd with Silver Twiſt, and the black Hackle of a Cock, or Capon, over all; and is a killing Fly, but not to be compared with the Green-drake, or Stone-fly.

Little yellow May-fly,

§ 5. Being the laſt of the four, of the ſame ſhape of the Green-drake, but a very little one, of as bright a yellow as can be ſeen, made of a bright yellow Camlet, Wings of a white-grey Feather dyed yellow. But ſome dub it with yellow Fur of a Martern.

Grey

Grey Drake.

§ 6. Is in all ſhapes and dimenſions perfectly the ſame with the Green-drake, but quite almoſt of another colour, being of a paler and more livid Yellow, and green and rib'd with black, quite down his Body, with black ſhinning Wings, diaphanous and very tender, Cob-web-like, it comes in, and is taken after the Green-drake. and in a Dub-fly, kills very well. It's made of the whitiſh Down of a Hog's Briſtles, and black Spaniels Fur mixt, and rib'd down the body with black Silk, the Whisks of the Tail, of the Hair of the Beard of a black Cat, and the Wings of the black-grey Feather of the wild Mallard.

Camlet-fly.

§ 7. Is taken from the middle of *May*, until the end of *June*, is in ſhape like a Moth, with fine Diapred or Water Wings, and made of a dark-brown ſhining Camlet, rib'd over with very ſmall light-green Silk, and the Wings of the double grey Feather of a wild Mallard, and is a very killing Fly for Graylings and ſmall Fiſh.

I had thought here to have put a period to the deſcription of any more Flies for *May*; yet ſince there are nine Flies of ſmall eſteem comparatively with the foregoing 7, I will inſert

them for the Readers ſake, who is at Liberty either to uſe or reject them, as his fancy is.

Turky-fly,

§ 8. Dubbing ravel'd out of ſome blew Stuff, and lap'd about with yellow Silk, the Wings of a grey wild Mallard's Feather.

Yellow Palmer

§ 9. Made with a yellow body, rib'd with Gold Twiſt, and large Wings of a wild Mallard's Feather dyed yellow, with the red Hackle of a Capon over all.

Black Fly,

§ 10. Dubbing of black Spaniels Fur, and the Wings of a grey wild Mallard's Feather.

Light Brown

§ 11. Made of a light Brown with a ſlender Body, the Dubbing twirl'd upon ſmall Red Silk, and raiſed with the point of a Needle, that the ribs or rows of Silk may appear through, the VVings of the Grey Feather of a wild Mallard.

Little

Little Dun,

§ 12. Dubbing of Bears Dun Hair whirled upon Yellow Silk, Wings of a wild Mallards, Grey Feather.

White Gnat,

§ 13. VVith a pale VVing, and a black Head.

Peacock-fly,

§ 14. Body made of the whirle of a Peacocks Feather with a Red Head, and VVings of a wild Mallards Feather.

Cow-lady,

§ 15. A little Fly, the Body of a Peacocks Feather, the Wings of a Red Feather, or ſtripes of the Red Hackle of a Cock.

Cow-turd-fly,

§ 16. Dubbing light Brown and Yellow mix'd, the VVings of the dark Grey Feather of a wild Mallard.

Dub-

Dub-flies for June.

From the Firſt to the Twenty fourth are taken the Green-drake, and Stone-fly ; and all the Month the Camlet-fly.

Owl-fly

§ 1. Is taken from the Twelfth to the Twenty fourth, late at Night ; Dubbing of a White Weaſels Tail, and White Grey Wing.

Barm-fly,

§ 2. Dubbing of the Fur of a Yellow Dun Cat, and the Grey Wings of a wild Mallards Feather.

Purple Hackle,

§ 3. Made with a Purple Body, whip'd about with a Red Capons Feather.

Purple Gold-Hackle,

§ 4. Made with a Purple Body, Gold twiſt over that, all whip'd about with a Red Capons Feather.

Fleſh-

Fleſh-fly.

§ 5. Dubbing of a Black Spaniels Fur, and Blew VVooll mix'd, and a Grey VVing.

Little Fleſh-fly,

§ 6. The Body made of the Whirle of a Peacocks Feather, and the VVings of the Grey Feather of a wild Drake.

Peacock-fly,

§ 7. The Body and VVings, both made of the Feather of that Bird.

Ant-fly,

§ 8. Dubbing of Brown and Red Camlets mix'd with a light Grey VVing.

Brown Gnat,

§ 9. Made with a very ſlender Body, of Brown and Violet Camlets mix'd well together with a light Grey VVing.

Little Black Gnat.

§ 10. Dubbing of Black Mohair, and a VVhite Grey VVing.

Green

Green Graſhopper.

§ 11. Dubbing of Green and Yellow VVooll mix'd, rib'd over with Green Silk, and a Red Capons Feather over all.

Dun Graſhopper.

§ 12. The Body ſlender, made of Dun Camlet, and a Dun Hackle at top.

Brown Hackle.

§ 13. Made of the light Brown Hair of a fat Colt, with a Red Hackle over all, wrap'd with Aſh coloured, or Hair coloured Silk.

Dub-flies for July.

Badger-fly.

§ 1. Dubbing of the ſoft Brown Fur of a Badgers Skin (that has been tewed in the Skinners Lime-pits) twirl'd upon Red Silk, with a Red Head, and a ſad Grey Wing of a wild Mallards Feather; an excellent Fly for this Month in many Rivers, and it's alſo taken in many Rivers in *March*, and *April*.

Orange-

Orange-fly,

§ 2. Dubbing of Orange coloured Wooll, and the Wings of the Feather of a Black-birds Quill.

Little White Dun,

§ 3. Body made of White Mohair, and the Wings of a Herons Blew Feather.

Waſp-fly,

§ 4. Made either of dark Brown Dubbing, or elſe of the Fur of a Black Cats Tail, rib'd about with Yellow Silk, Wings of the Grey Feather of a wild Mallard.

Black Hackle,

§ 5. The Body made of the Whirle of a Peacocks Feather, and a Black Hackle Feather on the top; there is alſo another, made of a Peacocks Herle without any Wings.

Shell-fly,

§ 6. Dubbing of Yellow Green Jerſey Wooll, and a little VVhite Hogs Hair mixt.

Black

Black Blew Dun,

§ 7. The Dubbing of the Fur of a black Rabbet, mix'd with a little Yellow, the VVings of the Feather of a Blew Pidgeons VVing.

Dub-flies for Auguſt.

Firſt, all the ſame Flies with *July*, alſo all Browns and Duns are taken, that were taken in *May*.

Late Ant-fly,

§ 1. Dubbing of the Black Brown Hair of a Cow, ſome Red warp'd in for the tag of the Tail, and a dark VVing; a very killing Fly.

Fern-fly,

§ 2. Dubbing of the Fur of a Hares Neck, that is of the colour of Fern, or Brackin, with a darkiſh Grey VVing of a wild Mallards Feather.

White Hackle,

§ 3. The Body of White Mohair, and wrapped about with a VVhite Hackle Feather.

Harry

Harry Long-Legs,

§ 4. The Body made of Bears Dun and Blew Wooll mixt, and a Brown Hackle Feather over all.

Dub-flies for September.

This Month the ſame Flies are taken, that were taken in *April*, and alſo the

Camel Brown Fly,

§ 1. The Dubbing pull'd out of the Lime of a Wall, whipt about with Red Silk, and a darkiſh Grey wild Mallards Feather for Wings.

Late Badger Fly,

§ 2. Made of the Black Hair of a Badgers Skin, mixt with the Yellow ſofteſt Down of a ſanded Hog.

October's *Dub-flies.*

The ſame Flies are taken in *October*, that were taken in *March*.

Notwithſtanding the wild Mallards Feather

is

is generally preſcribed for the Wings of Dub-flies in the precedent Catalogue of Flies; yet the Feathers got from the Pens and Quills of the Wings of the Shepſtare, Stare, or Starling is to be prefer'd, and better by many degrees than the Mallards Feather; and ſometimes for Brown Wings, the Feathers got from the Quills of a Throſtle-wing, is excellent.

Another Catalogue *of Flies, practiſed by a very good Angler, and uſefull to be known by the young Anglers in clear, Stony Rivers.*

Dub-flies for February.

Prime Dun.

§ 1. Dubbing of the Down of a Fox Cub, dub'd with ſad Aſh-coloured Silk, Wings of the Feather got from the Quill of a Shepſtares Wing. This Fly is made little, but there is another made of the ſame Dubbing but larger by far.

Dub-flies for March.

The ſame Flies taken in *February*, will be taken in *March*, and alſo the ſubſequent.

Mooriſh

Mooriſh Brown.

§ 1. Dub'd of the Wooll of a Black Sheep, and Red Silk, Wings of the Feather got from a Partridge Wings.

Palm-fly,

§ 2. Made of Hair of a Brown Spaniel got on the outſide of the Ear, and a little Sea-green Wooll mixt, Dub'd with Brown Cloth-coloured Silk, Wings of the Feather of a Shepſtare Quill got out of the Wing.

Green Tail,

§ 3. Made of the Brown Hair of a Spaniel, got on the outſide of the Ear, but a little in the end of the Tail, muſt be all of Sea-green Wooll without mixture, Wings as the laſt.

Dub-flies for April.

Bright Bear,

§ 1. Made of Bright Bears Hair, Dub'd with ſad Cloth coloured Silk, Wings of the Feather of a Shepſtares Quill; others Dub the Body with Yellow Silk, which is better.

Yellow Dun

§ 2. Made of Yellow Wooll, and Aſh-coloured Fox Cub Down mixt together, Dub'd with Yellow Silk, Wings of the Feather of a Shepſtares Quill: others Dub it with Dun Bears Hair, and the Yellow Fur got from a Marterns Skin mixt together, and with Yellow Silk, Wings of the Feather of a Shepſtares Quill. Make two other Flies their Bodies, Dub'd as the laſt, but in the one mingle ſanded Hogs Down, and in the other Black Hogs Down, and the Wings of the Feather of a Shepſtares Quill. And there is alſo taken an excellent Fly made of Dun Bears Hair, Yellow Marterns Fur, ſanded Hogs Down, and Black Hogs Down, all mixt in an equal proportion together Dub'd with Yellow Silk, and the Wings of the Feather of a Shepſtares Quill got out of the Wing: theſe Flies mentioned for *April* are very good, and will be taken almoſt all the Spring and Summer.

Note once for all, That the Yellow Fur got from a Marterns Skin is abſolutely the very beſt Yellow of any whatſoever, either to Dub with, or mingle with other Dubbing.

Dub-

Dub-flies for May.

Thorn-fly

§ 1. Dubbing of Black Lambs Wooll, and Dub'd with Black Silk, Wings of a Mallards light Grey; Note that all the Feathers got from Mallards for Wings, ought to be got from a wild Mallard, and not from a tame one.

Knop-fly

§ 2. Made of the Down of an Otter Cub, warpt about with the Herle of a Peacock, and Dub'd with Black Silk, Wings of the light Grey Feather of a Mallard.

Fern-Bud.

§ 3. This Fly is got on Fern, and the natural one is a very good Fly to dib with; it is but of a ſhort thick Body, of a very ſad Greeniſh colour, and hath two pair of VVings; the uppermoſt are hard, and ſometimes taken off, but the undermoſt are diaphanous and tender; it's Dub'd with the Herle of a Peacock, and very ſad Green-colour'd Silk, VVings of the Feather of a Felfare Quill got out of the VVing.

Little Dun.

§ 4. Dubbing of an Otters Fur, Dub'd with Aſh-coloured Silk, VVings of the Feather of a Shepſtares Quill.

Yellow May-*fly*,

§ 5. The Body made of Yellow VVooll mixt with Yellow Fur of a Martern, Dub'd with Yellow Silk, VVings of the lighteſt colour'd Feather of a Throſtle.

Dub-flies for June.

Black Midge, or Gnat,

§ 1. Made of the Down of a Mole, Dub'd with Black Silk, Wings of the light Grey Feather of a Shepſtares Quill.

Grey Midge, or Gnat.

§ 2. Dubbing of the Down of a ſad Grey Cat, or ſad Grey Camels Hair, Dub'd with Grey Silk, VVings of the Grey Feather of a Mallard.

Purple

Purple-fly,

§ 3. Made of Purple VVooll, and a little Bears Hair mixt with it, and ſometimes no Bears Hair at all; VVings of the Feather of a Shepſtares Quill, Dub'd with Purple Silk.

Sand-fly

§ 4. Made of the VVooll gotten of the Flank of a Black Sheep, Dub'd with Black Silk, VVings of the ſad coloured Feather of a Throſtle Quill; others make the Body of the Feather of a Herons Neck.

Mackerill

Dubbing of light Brown Camels Hair, Dub'd with Black Silk, VVings of a Red Cocks Feather.

Dub-flies for July.

Blue Dun,

§ 1. Made of the Down of a VVater-Mouſe, and the Blewiſh Dun of an Old Fox mixt together, Dub'd with ſad Aſh-coloured Silk; VVings of the Feather of a Shepſtare Quill.

Auguſt *Flies.*

Buſs Brown,

§ 1. Made of the light Brown Hair of the Ear of a Cur, the Head Black, VVings of the Feather of a Red Hen whipt with Orange coloured Silk.

Hearth-fly

§ 2. Made of the VVooll of an Old Black Sheep with ſome Grey Hairs in it, for the Body and Head, VVings Dub'd with Black Silk, VVings of the light Feather of a Shepſtares Quill.

Piſmire-fly.

§ 3. Make the Body of bright Brown Bears Hair twirl'd upon Red Silk, VVings of the ſaddeſt colour'd Feather got from the Quill of a Shepſtares VVing, a good Fly.

September's *Fly.*

Little Blue Dun.

§ 1. Made of the Down of a Mouſe for Body and Head, dub'd with ſad Aſh-coloured Silk;

Silk; Wings of the ſad coloured Feather of a Shepſtares Quill.

Note, that the Feather got from the Quills, or Pens of Shepſtares Wings, Throſtle Wings, Fieldfare Wings are generally better (the 2 firſt eſpecially) to uſe for Dub-fly Wings, than thoſe got from a wild Mallard, or Drake.

Thus have I preſented you with 2 Catalogues of Flies, the one conſiſting of about 65 Flies, the other of about 20 Flies, proper for Trouts, Graylings and Salmon Smelts, in Mountainous, Stony Rivers; which, although the Liſts be large and numerous, yet a few of them will be ſufficient to be ſtored with, and will ſerve all the Year for almoſt any River.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How to Angle for the great Trout with a Minnow, or Loach.

§ 1. YOu may Angle with a Minnow, or ſmall Loach thus, to be baited on a large ſiz'd Hook, *viz.* put the Hook in at his Mouth, and out at his Guill, then having drawn the Hook 2 or 3 inches beyond, or through his Guill, put it again into his Mouth, and the point and beard out at his Tail, then draw your Line ſtraight, ſo that the Body of

the Minnow will be almoſt ſtraight on the Hook; and cloſe his Mouth that no Water get in, which you muſt avoid, or you may ſtitch up his Mouth, or you may (when you ſet on the Hook) faſten ſome Hogs Briſtles under the Silk, leaving the points above a Straws breadth and a half, or almoſt half an inch ſtanding out towards the Line, which will keep him from ſlipping back; this done, try how it will turn by drawing it croſs the Water, or againſt a Stream, and if it do not turn nimbly, then turn the Tail a-little to the right or left Hand, till it turn quick, otherwiſe you'll catch nothing; you muſt alſo have a Swivel or Turn in this way, as well as for Pikes (the Swivel makes the Minnow play better, and preſerves the Line from ſnarling by turning) placed about a yard or more from the Hook; you need no Lead on your Line: You muſt continually draw your Bait up the Stream, within half a foot, or a foot of the ſuperficies of the Water; in the ſame manner, Angle with a ſmall Loach, or Bull-head, his Guill-fins cut off. And you are always to Angle this way in a clear Water, and in the Stream, or on very windy days, that will furl the Water, in the plain deeps, and only in the Months of *March*, *April*, *September* and *October*. You may thus alſo Angle for the Pike and Pearch.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVII.

The various Ways of Angling for the Pike.

§ 1. TRowling for Pike is very pleaſant, and the Trowl may be bought ready made, only let it have a Winch to wind it up withal; and you muſt always Angle therewith in a clear Water, and, if poſſible, on a windy day. And ſome prefer a ſingle Hook before the double Pike-hook, and bait with a Minnow, as well to catch Pearch as Pike, by Trowling.

Trowling Tackle, &c.

§ 2. For this Fiſh, your Tackle muſt be ſtrong, your Rod muſt be long, and not very ſlender at the top, where you muſt place a ſmall ſlender Ring for your Line to run through. Let your Line be Silk, for at leaſt 2 yards next the Hook, and the reſt 4 or 6 folds of the very beſt and neatlieſt ſpun Hemp-yarn, and curiouſly twiſted, 18 or 30 yards long, your Hook double and ſtrongly armed with Wire, for above a foot; then, with a Probe or Needle, you muſt draw the Wire in at the Fiſhes Mouth, and out at his Tail, that

ſo

ſo the Hook may lye in the Mouth of the Fiſh, and both the points on either ſide; upon the ſhank of the Hook, faſten ſome Lead very ſmooth, that it go into the Fiſhes Mouth, and ſink her with the head downwards, as though ſhe had been playing on the top of the Water, and were returning to the bottom: Your Bait may be a large Gudgeon, Bleak, Minnow, ſmall Trout, ſmall Roch or Dace, ſmall ſalmon Smelts, Pearch, his uppermoſt Back-fins cut off, a piece of an Eel, Loach, or ſometimes a Frog, in Hay time. Your Hook thus baited, you muſt tye the Tail of the Fiſh cloſe and faſt to the Wire, or elſe with drawing to and again, the Fiſh will rend off the Hook; or, which is neater, with a Needle and ſtrong Thread, ſtitch through the Fiſh on either ſide of the Wire, and tye it very faſt. Weeds are deſtructive to Baits, eſpecially when they are ſtrong and tough, ſo that if you be not careful in tying the Tail of the Bait faſt to the joint of the Wire, the Weeds will ſpoil it before the Pike come.

How to Trowl.

§ 3. All being thus fitted, caſt your Fiſh up and down in ſuch places as you know the Pike frequents, obſerving ſtill that he ſink ſome depth before you pull him up again; when the Pike cometh (if it be not ſunk deep) you may ſee the Water move, at leaſt you may

feel

feel him, then ſlack your Line, and give him length enough to run away to his hold, whither he'll go directly, and there pouch or ſwallow it; ever beginning (as you may perceive) with the Head, ſwallowing that firſt; thus let him lye until you ſee the Line move in the Water, and then you may certainly conclude, he hath pouched or ſwallowed the Bait, and ranged abroad for more; then, with the Trowl, wind up your Line (which ſhould always be 20 or 30 yards at leaſt) till you think you have it almoſt ſtraight; then, with a ſmart jerk, hook him, and make your Pleaſure and Paſtime to your content and ſatisfaction.

§ 4. Some uſe no Rod at all, but holding the Line on Links on their hand, uſing Lead and Float.

§ 5. Others uſe a very great Hook, with the Hook at the Tail of the Fiſh, and when the Pike cometh, they ſtrike at the firſt pull of the Pike.

§ 6. Others uſe to put a ſtrong String or Thread in at the Mouth of the Bait, and out at one of the Guills, and ſo over the Head, and in at the other Guills, and ſo tye the Bait to the Hook, leaving a little length of Thread or String betwixt the Fiſh and Hook, that ſo the Pike may turn the head of the Bait the better to ſwallow it, and then, as before, after ſome pauſe, ſtrike pretty ſmartly. If any Weed hang on your Bait, the Pike will refuſe it.

§ 7. Some

§ 7. Some uſe to tye the Bait, Hook and Line to a Bladder, or bundle of Flags, or Bull-ruſhes, faſtening the Line very gently in the cleft of a ſmall Stick, to hold the Bait from ſinking more than (its allowed length) half a yard, and the Stick muſt be faſtened to the Bladder or Flags, to which the Line being tyed, that it might eaſily unfold, and run to its length, and ſo give the Pike liberty to run away with the Bait, and by the Bladder or Flags recover their Line again; you muſt obſerve this way to turn off your Bait, with the Wind or Stream, that they may carry it away, or ſome uſe (for more ſport) if the Pike be a great one, and in a Pond, to tye the ſame to the Foot of a Gooſe, which the Pike, if large, will ſometimes pull under the Water.

Angling for the Pike at Snap.

§ 8. When you Fiſh for the Pike at Snap, you muſt give him leave to run a little, then ſtrike; but be ſure to ſtrike the contrary way to that which he runneth; a double ſpring Hook is principally, if not only uſeful in this way of Angling, and much to be preferred before all Hooks; for the Pike will uſually hold the Bate ſo faſt in his Teeth that you may fail to pull it out of his Mouth, and alſo ſtrike him, whereas with a ſpring Hook though he hold it never ſo faſt, the Wire will draw through the Bait, and ſo the ſpring will open,

and

and you will very frequently Hook him on the outſide of his Mouth: Angling with Trowl is a ſurer, at leaſt a more eaſy way for a learner to practiſe, (who wants an Inſtructer) than the Snap; beſides, the Snap is chiefly uſeful to take a Pike, which often pricking with the Trowl hath made wary and cunning (for one that hath not been ſcared will ſwallow the Bait boldly) ſuch an one is beſt taken at Snap, and the Snap is beſt for *March*, when the Pike bites ill, becauſe they Spawn then, and are ſick.

How to Bait for the Snap.

§ 9. In this way of Angling put on your Bait thus, *viz.* make a hole with the point of your Hook or Probe, in the Fiſhes ſide, as near the middle as you can, put in your Armed Wire, and draw it out at the Mouth, and with a Needle and Thread ſew up the Fiſhes Mouth.

Others uſe the Probe to draw the Arming Wire under the Skin only (not the Ribs by any means) and out at the Bone behind the Guills, then again under the Guills and out at the Mouth; this latter way is much better, becauſe there is only the Skin to hinder the drawing and piercing of the Hook; whereas the former way, if the Pike hold faſt (as commonly he doth) all the Fleſh on the outſide of the Fiſh will be drawn into a heap or lump,

lump, ſo thick, that the Hook (except very large) can hardly reach through it to pierce the Pikes Chaps.

Obſerve that the Pike will feed to that exceſs and fulneſs that he cannot gorge your Bait, yet will he riſe and ſhew himſelf, and make many offers, having ſuch a good will to it, that you may often catch him with the Snap.

Rules for Pike Angling.

§ 1. After he hath taken your Bait if he move ſlowly, and make no ſtop, give him time, and you'll ſeldom miſs him; caſt not the Bait in one and the ſame place above once or twice at moſt; for he commonly takes the Bait at firſt or ſecond throw.

§ 2. Or if he lye after he hath taken the Bait (as ſometimes he will) gently move your hand, to try which way his Head lieth; if you cannot diſcover that, then ſtrike directly upwards, otherwiſe you may (inſtead of Hooking him) pluck the Bait out of his Mouth.

§ 3. If he take it upon the top of the Water, and lie ſtill, you ſee which way his Head lieth, and may order your ſelf accordingly.

§ 4. At the Snap your Tackle muſt be ſtronger than for the Trowl, in regard you muſt ſtrike much more forceably; your beſt Lines are made of Green or Sky-colour'd Silk, 30 yards

yards long for the Trowl. Next are thoſe of Green Thread or Hemp.

§ 5. At the Snap you muſt give two luſty jerks one after the other, and be ſure you ever ſtrike contrary to the way his Head lieth, leſt you pull the Bait from him only.

§ 6. Faſten your Swivel to the end of your Line (for you muſt uſe a Swivel both at Trowl and Snap) and Hook your Armed Wire upon the Swivel.

§ 7. For the Snap caſt a piece of Lead hollow, and ſo wide as to go over the Wire, and the end of the Hook, which you draw within the Fiſhes Mouth; let it lie there to ſink his Head downwards, make it ſo rough that it ſlip not out, or ſew up the Fiſhes Mouth, which is better than to place the Lead upon the Line, (as ſome uſe) for the Lead will very often ſlip further, and alſo entangle the Bait and Line together.

§ 8. Both at Snap and with Trowl, cut away one of the Fins of the Bait cloſe at the Guills, and alſo behind the vent, another on the contrary ſide; the Bait will play better.

§ 9. In caſting with Trowling, or at Snap, be ſure to raiſe your Hand a little when you ſee the Bait ready to fall into the Water; this will prevent that the Bait daſh not violently into the Water in its fall, which affrights the Pike (though he be a bold Fiſh) when it falls behind and near unto him: After your Bait is in, then let it ſink alittle then draw it towards you,

you, near to the top, then let it ſink again, *&c.*

§ 10. Make your Lead for the Trowl four Square, and much thicker and ſhorter than moſt uſe, the Square will keep the Hook in the ſame place as you ſet it, and the thick ſhort Lead ſinks him with his Head downwards, ſo that he will not ſhoot ſlopewiſe, as he doth when the Lead is long.

§ 11. Join your Wire Links together with a Steel Ring; the Bait will play and ſink better, if it lie only in the Baits Mouth, it will not entangle in the Line ſo often. *February*, *April*, beginning of *May*, *September*, and *October*, are the chief Months for Trowling, and *March* for the Snap.

§ 12. A larger Bait doth more invite the Pike, but a leſſer takes him more ſurely, as ſooneſt gorged or ſwallowed, and the Hook certainly taken into his Mouth both at Snap and Trowl. Two or three Baits will ſerve all the day, and Bait them before you go to Angle, and uſe one until it be Water-ſopt.

§ 13. Uſe a large white Minnow, or large Loach, put on with the Hook in his Mouth, Angle with him for a Pike as you do for a Trout, and let your Hook be ſmall; uſe not a great Hook with a ſmall Bait, nor a great Bait with a ſmall Hook. You may catch both Pikes and Pearches, if you Trowl with a Minnow or Loach, or ſmall Gudgeon, and have not too big a Hook. You muſt always Trowl in a clear

clear Water, and if poſſible in a windy day. When the Water is Tranſparent and the day clear and bright, a large Gudgeon is the beſt Bait for Pike, but if the day be dark or cloudy, Roch, Dace, or a Bleak new taken, are the beſt Baits can be made uſe of.

Angling for Pike with a Minnow.

Get a ſingle Hook, long and ſlender in the ſhank, put Lead upon it, as thick near the bent as will go into the Minnow's Mouth, place the point of the Hook directly up the Face of the Fiſh, let the Rod be as long as you can handſomly mannage, with a Line of the ſame length, caſt up and down, and mannage it as when you trowl with any other Bait; if, when the Pike hath taken it, he run to the end of the Line before he hath gorged or ſwallowed it, do not ſtrike, but hold ſtill only, and he will return back and ſwallow it; but if you uſe that Bait with a Trowl, ſome eſteem it the very beſt for Pike, eſpecially if you uſe a Swivel. You may uſe a large Loach after the ſame manner for the Pike, as alſo a Gudgeon, Bleak, *&c.*

The manner of Snaring young Pikes or Jacks.

In *May*, *June* and *July*, in a clear, calm, hot, gloomy day, Pikes ſoar on the Waters ſurface, or near it, then fix a Snare or Running-nooſe

of Wire to the end of a ſtrong Pack-thread, a yard and half long, and the other end of the Pack-thread to a long Pole or Goad that is mannageable: Your Snare or Running-nooſe, aforeſaid, being open, you may obſerve Jacks to lie on the top of the Water, and you may eaſily put the Snare over them, and, with a quick and ſmart jerk, hoiſt them amain to Land. This way I have taken many, near *Oxford*.

Hooking Pikes in Ditches.

Or you may, at that time, take a Line of 7 or 8 foot, and thereunto arm or whip a Hook of the largeſt ſize, and lead the ſhank of the Hook neatly, that the weight may guide it at pleaſure, and you may ſtrike the Pike with the bare Hook where you pleaſe, when they go a Frogging into Ditches, in *May*, *June* and *July*; and you ſee them ſoaring on the ſuperficies of the Water. Or you may whip four Hooks to ſuch a Line, the points of each a quarter of a circle diſtant from each other, and all whipt together, *&c.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of Fiſh-ponds.

WHen the Ground is drained, and the Earth made firm, where the Ponds head muſt be, in that place drive two or three rows of Oak or Elm Piles, and lay Faggots of ſmaller Wood betwixt them, and Earth betwixt and above them, very well rammed; and then ſet another row of Piles as the firſt were; which ſhould be about the height you intend to make the Sluice or Floodgate, or the Vent conveying the over-flowings of your Pond, in any Flood, that may endanger the breakings of the Ponds Dam. The depth of the Pond ſhould be about 7 foot, except at ſome one end or ſide it be very ſhallow, which is neceſſary for the preſervation of the Spawn and Fry of Fiſh.

§ 2. Plant Willows or Alders about the Pond, and caſt in ſome Faggots in ſandy places, not far from the ſide, for Fiſh to ſpawn in, and defend their Spawn and young Fry from Ducks, Herons, Geeſe, Frogs, Kingsfiſhers and Vermin, eſpecially the Spawn of Carp and Tench.

§ 3. Contrive the Pond ſo, as the Water may be continually renewed by ſome Rill or

Rain-water, which inclines Fiſh both to breed and feed better, and makes them be of a better and pleaſanter taſt: So Pools that are large, have gravelly bottoms and ſhallows for Fiſh to ſport themſelves on, make them purely taſted: So hollow Banks, Shelves and Roots of Trees ſave and preſerve them from their Enemies and Devourers, and Shades defend them in the Summer from heat, and in the Winter from cold: But many Trees growing about the Pond, is ill for Fiſh; becauſe the falling and rotting of the Leaves makes the Water ſtink and ſour, and the Fiſh ill-taſted.

§ 4. The Carp loves and delights in gravelly, ſandy Ground and bottoms; and breed beſt in Marle-pits, or Pits that have clean, clay bottoms, or in new Ponds, or Ponds that are not very deep, and in ſuch likewiſe that lye dry a Winter ſeaſon; but not ſo well in old Ponds that be full of Mud and Weeds: And they would have their Ponds warm, and free from Wind, with Graſs growing on the bottom or ſides, whereon, in the hot Months, they'll feed and eat, and would alſo have Willows grow on the ſides of the Ponds. In Summer, when great droughts are, ſow Hay-ſeeds round the ſides of your Ponds, and rake the ſame with an Iron-rake, and Graſs will quickly grow, and when Rain repleniſhes the Pond, Carps will feed thereon.

Carps

Carps are very great and numerous breeders, and often over-ſtore the Ponds where they like well, and delight, ſo do Breams, and that makes them both be lean, and not thrive ſo well.

Cleanſe and drain your Ponds every four or five years, letting them lye dry ſix or nine Months, to kill the Water-weeds, as Water-lillies, Candocks, Reat and Bull-ruſhes, that breed there; and as theſe die, ſow Oats, Parſley-ſeeds, and Hay-ſeeds, and let Graſs grow on the bottom and ſides of the Ponds, for Carps to feed on; and obſerve what kind of Fiſh ſoever either feed beſt, or thrive in the Water of the reſpective Ponds, and ſuit them accordingly. The Tench and Eel love and delight in Mud, and foul Waters and Ponds.

§ 5. Often feed the Fiſh by throwing into them chippings of Bread, Ale-grains, Curds, or the Intrails of Chickens, or of any Fowl or Beaſt you kill for your ſelf: So Garden-earth and Parſley thrown into a Pond, very well recovers and refreſhes ſick Fiſh. When you ſtore a breeding Pond, put in two or three Males for one Female; but in a feeding Pond, take no care whether there be more Male or Female Carps: Others adviſe to put in two Females for one Male into the breeding Pond. If there be great ſtore of Rubbiſh in a Pond, there needs a leſs ſupply of adventitious Feed.

§ 6. Carps and Tenches thrive and breed beſt, when no other Fiſh is put with them into

the ſame Pond; for all other Fiſh devour their Spawn. Others ſay, that Carp, Tench and Bream will breed and like well in the ſame Pond; but ſince Breams are ſuch exceſſive breeders, I ſhould keep them out of the Pond wherein Carp and Tench are. So likewiſe Roches are prodigious breeders for number, and (like Sheep in a paſture) devour and conſume all the ſweet Feed in Ponds, and thereby pinch and ſtarve all other Fiſh.

§ 7. Pike, Pearch, Roch, Dace, Bream and Minnows, may be put into one and the ſame Pond; the two firſt will feed on, and mightily devour the Fry and Spawn of all the others, which are numerous breeders. Breams will like very well in fair and large Ponds, or Mill-dams. Let your Pikes be all of a length you ſtore your Ponds with; for one of 30 inches will devour one of 15.

§ 8. In Winter break the Ice, if a great Froſt, and make ſeveral holes in the Ice of your reſpective Fiſh-ponds for Fiſh to breathe, and take the Air at, and throw Bean-ſtraw into the Pond, if you ſuſpect a hard Froſt to approach.

§ 9. Kill and deſtroy all Herons, Cormorants, Sea-gulls, Kings-fiſhers, VVater-coots, VVater-rats, VVater-mice, Bitterns, VVild-ducks and Otters, that frequent the Pond; and ſuffer not much ſhooting at VVild-fowl; for that affrightens, harms and deſtroys Fiſh. Your Tame-ducks are great Enemies to your

Fiſh

Fiſh in the Fiſh-ponds; for they devour all the ſpawn, and the young fry of Fiſh: The like do Geeſe, but not ſo much as Ducks.

§ 10. You may carry young Carps, or Tenches alive 40, or 60 Miles, if you lay one layr of Fiſh, and another of very wet Moſs in a Pannier, and refreſh them with freſh Water every 10 Miles, which way is to be uſed for thoſe you'll preſerve alive, to ſtore Ponds with.

§ 11. The Age of Fiſhes is more uncertain, than that of Terreſtrial Creatures, becauſe living under the Water they are not ſo eaſily obſerved. Many of them breathe not, by which means, their vital Spirits are more cloſed in; and therefore, though they receive ſome refrigeration by their Guills, yet that refrigeration is not ſo continual, as when it is by breathing.

They are free from the Deſiccation, and Depredation of the Ambient Air, becauſe they live in the Water. Yet there is no doubt, but the Water Ambient piercing and receiv'd into the Pores of their Body, doth more hurt to long life than the Air.

It is affirm'd too, that their Blood is not warm, ſome of them are great devourers, even of their own kind. Their Fleſh is ſofter, more watery, and tender than that of Terreſtrial Creatures.

That which they report of ſome Fiſhes, is ſtrange; that after a certain Age their Bodies

will waſte, and grow very ſlender, only their Head and Tail retaining their former greatneſs.

The Pike, amongſt Fiſhes living in freſh Water, is found to laſt longeſt, ſometimes to 40 Years, though others think 10 Years to be the extent of his Age; he's a Ravener, of a Fleſh ſomewhat dry and firm. The Pike, Chub, Pearch, Trout and Eel amongſt freſh Water Fiſh, are the greateſt devourers of other Fiſh. The Carp, Bream, Tench, Eel, Chub, and the like, are by my Lord *Bacon* held not to live above 10 Years, yet others on their own Obſervations, affirm the Carp to live 30, or 40 Years. Salmons are quick of growth, ſhort of life: But the Pearch is ſlow of growth, long of life. As Terreſtrial Creatures cannot bear the Air that is too hot, or too cloſe; ſo Fiſhes are ſuffocated in Waters, if they be totally and long frozen.

§ 12. Salmons ſpawn in moſt Rivers in *Auguſt*; then they dig a hole, or grave in a ſafe place in the Gravel, and there place their Eggs, or Spawn (after the Melter hath done his natural Office) and cunningly hide, and cover it over with Gravel and Stones. So leaving it to be enlivened by the Suns heat, and ſo they become Smelts early in the next Spring.

§ 13. In *Lorrain* in a Lake there, there's ſuch abundance of Carps, that the preſent French King Yearly receives a great Revenue there-

thereby. In *Perſia* there are neither Pikes nor Eels, and in *Muſcovy* no Carps are either in their Rivers, Lakes, or Ponds. In *Spain* there are no Pikes.

§ 14. All ſorts of Creatures whatever have their Reductives, and Corrections, elſe the Univerſe would be over-ſtock'd with every particular Species: Man hath his Wars, Plagues, Famins, Foreign Plantations, Sea Voyages, Debaucheries and Exceſſes, which, were it not for theſe Mankind would grow ſo numerous, that the whole Earth and Sea could not produce ſufficient Food, and Aliment for his nutrition; and amongſt other Creatures, Fiſhes are infinitely more numerous, or increaſing than Beaſts, or Birds, as appears by the numerous ſpawn of any one Fiſh, though ordinarily they breed but once a Year; and if all theſe ſhould come, even the Ocean it ſelf would long ſince have been over-ſtored with Fiſh. Now the Correctives and Reductives of theſe are very many. 1. *Ariſtotle* Obſerves in his Sixth *de Hiſtoria Animalium, cap.* 13. theſe Eggs that are not ſprinkled, *Aſpergine Seminis genitalis maris*, prove unfruitful; a great part are devoured by the Male, and much more by other Fiſh; ſome of their Eggs are buried in the ſlime, and Corrupted. 2. Many are taken by Men and imployed for Food. 3. As among Birds and Beaſts, there are Birds and Beaſts of Prey, ſo eſpecially amongſt Fiſh: And though the Wiſdom of Providence hath given

given certain Expedients to Animals, eſpecially Fiſhes of the weaker Nature, to eſcape the voracious, as ſwiftneſs to ſome, ſmalneſs to others, whereby they eſcape to ſhallows, and ſhoars unacceſſable to the greater: And to thoſe that are not able to move, or at leaſt to move ſwiftly, the Protection of Shells, as Oyſters, Eſcallops, Crabs, Lobſters, and other Shell-fiſh, yet a very great number are devoured by the voracious kind.

My Lord Chief Juſtice *Hales* tells us in his *Moral Evidences*, that a Friend of his, having ſtored a very great Pond of 3, or 4 Acres of Ground with Carps, Tench and other Pond-fiſh, of a very great number, only put in 2 very little ſmall Pikes; at 7 Years end upon the draught of his Pond, not one Fiſh was left, but the 2 Pikes grown to an exceſſive bigneſs, and all the reſt, together with their Millions of Fry, devoured by thoſe pair of Tyrants. 4. Beaſts alſo and Birds of Prey, as Otters, Water-Rats, Bitterns, Herons, Ducks, Geeſe, Kings-fiſhers, Sea-gulls, Cormorants and other Fowl of that kind, deſtroy many both in Sea, Rivers, Ponds and Lakes. 5. Extream Froſts, eſpecially in Rivers, Ponds and Lakes make a great deſtruction of Fiſh, partly by freezing them, partly by the excluſion of the Ambient Air, which inſinuates it ſelf into the Water, and is neceſſary for the preſervation of the lives of thoſe watery Inhabitants. 6. By great heats and droughts, not only drying up

Lakes,

Lakes, Ponds and Rivers, but alſo tainting the Water with exceſſive heat, and though thoſe two do not ſo much concern Sea-fiſh, who have more ſcope and room, yet they have a great influx upon Rivers, Ponds and Lakes.

§ 15. *Janus Dubravius* ſays, Carps begin to ſpawn at the Age of 3 Years, and continue to do ſo 'till 30, both they and moſt other Fiſh ſpawn in the Spring, or Summer, except Trouts; Carps, Loaches, and Gudgeons ſpawn ſeveral times in the Summer, and then 3 or 4 Male Carps will follow a Female, but ſhe diſſembling a Coyneſs, they force her through Weeds and Flags, where ſhe lets fall her Eggs or Spawn, which ſticks faſt to the VVeeds, and then they let fall their melt upon it, and ſo it becomes in a ſhort time a living Fiſh; and it's thought that moſt Fiſh breed after this manner, except the Eel. And when the Spawner hath weakened her ſelf by doing that Natural Office, 2 or three melters have helped her off from the VVeeds, by bearing her up on both ſides, and guarding her into the deep.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIX.

The manner, and chief ways of dreſſing freſh Water Fiſh.

ALthough I cannot pretend to the leaſt skill in Cookery; yet I will not deny, but that (as the times phraſe it) I underſtand ſomething of eating, and very well know that the Angler when from home, and would pleaſure his Friends with the fruit of his recreations, frequently meets with ſuch ill Huſwives at ordinary Inns, or Alehouſes (being often enforced to take up his Quarters, at ſuch Places, for the conveniences of the River he Angles at) as renders by their ill dreſſing the moſt delicate Fiſh, not only ingrateful to the Palate, but even nauſeous to the Stomach; to obviate which inconvenience, I will here furniſh the Angler (out of Mr. *Walton*, Ingenious Mr. *Cotton*, and others) with the eaſieſt, and beſt ways of dreſſing all manner of freſh Water Fiſh, ſo that upon ſuch ſtreſs, he may direct his Land-lady ſo well, (if ſhe'll but obſerve him) as neither to ſhame her ſelf, nor ſpoil a good diſh of Fiſh. And, I will firſt teach how to dreſs the Chub, he being a Fiſh that has loſt much Reputation, for want of good dreſſing.

How

How to dreſs a Chub.

§ 1. Firſt ſcale him, and then waſh him clean, and take out his Guills; and to that end make the hole as little, and near to his Guills as you may conveniently, and eſpecially make clean his Throat from Graſs and Weeds that are uſually in it, (for if that be not very clean, it will make him to taſt very ſour) then with your Knife cut away all his Guills, having ſo done, put ſome ſweet Herbs (which are the tops of Roſemary, Thyme, Sweet Marjoram, Parſly and Winter Savory) into his Belly, and then tye him with 2 or 3 ſplinters to a Spit, and roſt him, baſted often with Vinegar, or rather Verjuice and Butter, with good ſtore of Salt mixt with it. This way makes him a good diſh of Meat, and dries up the fluid watery humour, with which all Chubs abound. Other Fiſh may be dreſt thus, as Barbel, Tench, Bream, *&c.* only baſt them with Butter only, and Salt firſt ſtrewed on.

Another way to dreſs a Chub.

§ 2. When you have ſcaled a Chub, and cut off his Tail, Fins and Guills, and waſhed him very clean and taken out the Guts, *&c.* then chine or ſlit him through the middle, as a Salt-fiſh is uſually cut, then give him 3,

or

or 4 cuts, or ſcotches on the Back with your Knife, and broil him leiſurely on clear Charcoal, or Wood-coal Fire that are free from ſmoak, and all the time he is broyling, baſt him with the beſt ſweet Butter, and good ſtore of Salt mixt with it, and to this add a little Thyme cut exceeding ſmall, or bruiſed into the Butter; and he's often to be turn'd whilſt he's broiling. Dreſt in this manner the watry taſt is taken away, for which many except againſt him. He's to be eaten the ſame Day he's caught, and forget not to cut his Guills, and waſh his Throat very clean; and his Body is not to be waſhed after gutted, (as indeed no other Fiſh ſhould be) but wiped clean with a Linnen Cloth. After this manner you may dreſs other Fiſh, as Trouts, Barbels and Tenches, *&c.*

Another way to dreſs a Chub.

§ 3. Set a Kettle over the fire with ſome Water, and a little Beer Vinegar, ſo much of both as will cover the Fiſh, and therein put Fennel and good Store of Salt; and when the Water boils put in the Chub, (he being firſt ſcaled, gutted, Throat made clean, and wiped clean, and Guills cut away) and let him boil up but afterwards very leiſurely, and when boil'd enough, take him out, and lay him on a Board for the Water to run from him; having ſo reſted one Hour, pick

all

all the Fiſh from the Bones, and lay it on a Pewter diſh, which ſet on a Chafing diſh of Coals, and put good ſtore of Butter to it, which when the Fiſh is exceeding hot, ſerve it up, and eat it as minced Veal, and ſcald ſome Parſly, and ſhred it and mix it with the Fiſh.

To dreſs Trouts, &c. *the common way.*

§ 4. Firſt with a Knife gently ſcrape all the ſlime off them, then waſh them clean in Salt and Water, and cut away all their Guills, then gut them, and wipe them very clean with a Linnen Cloth, then flower them on one ſide with the fineſt Wheat flower, then lay them in the Frying-pan, with that ſide downwards which was flowered, and fry them very well, but leiſurely in good ſweet Butter, until they be brown and criſp; then flower that ſide which is uppermoſt, and turn it downwards, and fry as aforeſaid, *&c.* then take them out of the Frying-pan, and lay them on a Pewter diſh, firſt very well heated before the fire; then pour off the Butter the Trouts were fry'd in, into the Greaſe-pot, and not on the Fiſh; then fry good ſtore of Parſly and young Sage in other ſweet Butter, until they be a little criſp, then take out the Herbs and lay them on the Fiſh, but put not any of the Butter wherein the Herbs were fry'd, on the Fiſh: Then beat up ſome ſweet Butter, with

with 3, or 4 Spoonfuls of boyling hot Spring Water (an Anchovis being firſt therein diſſolved, if you can eaſily have an Anchovis) and pour it on the Fiſh, or Diſh where they are, and ſerve them up, garniſhing your diſh with ſome Straw-berries, or other Green Leaves. This is the way to fry Trouts, Salmon Smelts under a foot long, ſmall Pikes, Pearches, Graylings, Roches, Daces, Breams, Gudgeons, only thoſe that have ſcales are to be clean ſcaled, which muſt be done very lightly and carefully with a Knife for bruiſing the Fiſh, and thoſe that have no ſcales muſt be well waſhed, and rubbed in Salt and Water before they are gutted, and the Guills of every Fiſh is to be cut clean out, and of the Fiſh before gutted; for the Guills eaſily contract an ill ſavour, taſt and ſmell. This way alſo you may fry ſmall Eels, after they are flead, gutted, wiped clean, and cut into pieces 4, or 5 inches long.

The beſt way of dreſſing a Trout, &c.

§ 5. Take your Trout, waſh, and dry him with a clean Napkin; then open him, and having taken out his Guts, and all the Blood, and cut and taken away his Guills, wipe him very clean within, but waſh him not, and give him three ſcotches with the Knife to the Bone, on one ſide only; after which take a clean Kettle, and put in as much hard ſtale Beer

Beer Vinegar, (but it muſt not be dead Vinegar) and a little White-wine and Water, as will cover the Fiſh you intend to boil; then throw into the Liquor a good quantity of Salt, the rind of a Limon, a Handful of ſlic'd Horſe-Radiſh-root, with a handſome little faggot of Roſemary, Thyme, Sweet Marjoram, Parſly, and Winter Savory. Then ſet your Kettle upon a quick fire of Wood, and let your Liquor boil up to the height before you put in your Fiſh, and then, if there be many, put them in one by one, that they may not ſo cool the Liquor, as to make it fall, and whilſt your Fiſh is boiling, beat up the Butter for your Sauce with a Ladleful or two of the Liquor it is boiling in, (one Anchovy being diſſolv'd in the Liquor if you have Anchovis) and being boil'd enough, immediately pour the Liquor from the Fiſh, and being laid in a Pewter Diſh (firſt well warm'd before the fire) pour your Butter upon it, and ſtrewing it plentifully over with ſhaved Horſe-Radiſh-root, and a little pounded Ginger; Garniſh the ſides of your Diſh, and the Fiſh it ſelf with a ſlic'd Limon or two, and ſerve it up. Moſt omit the Anchovis in the Sauce. In the ſame manner you may dreſs a Salmon Moat; likewiſe a Grayling, Carp, Bream, Roch, Dace may be dreſt after the ſame manner, only they are to be ſcaled, which a Trout never is, and that muſt be done very lightly and carefully, with a Knife, for bruiſing the

Fiſh: alſo a Pike may be thus dreſt, the ſlime being firſt well ſcoured off with Water and Salt, ſo likewiſe may a Pearch and Tench be dreſt, but before you pour on the Sawce, blanch off very neatly the Skins of the Pearch and Tench. For want of Horſe-Radiſh-root, uſe ſlic't Ginger and ſome groſly bruiſed Pepper. Or rather long Pepper, which is good for to boil Fiſh with.

To dreſs Salmon.

§ 6. You may fry pieces of Salmon, or a Chine of Salmon, as you are directed for the Trout, at § 4. of this Chapter.

To ſtew Salmon, or other Fiſh.

§ 7. Take a Salmon, draw it, *&c.* ſcotch the Back, put it whole, or in pieces, into a Stew-pan, and thereunto put ſome Beer-Vinegar, White-wine and Water, as much as will cover the Fiſh, put alſo to it ſome whole Cloves, large Mace, ſlic'd Nutmeg, ſlic'd Ginger, a Bay-leaf, a bundle of the tops of Roſemary, ſtripped Thyme, ſweet Marjoram, Winter-ſavory, and pick'd Parſley, ſome whole Pepper, Currans, Salt, Butter, and an Orange in halfs, ſtew all leiſurely together, and, when well ſtewed, diſh them with carved Sippets, lay on the Spices, and ſlic'd Limon, run it over with Butter beaten up in ſome of the Li-

quor

quor it was ſtewed in, garniſh the Diſh with ſearſed Manchet, *&c.* Thus you may ſtew any other Fiſh, as Carp, Pike, Bream, Pearch, *&c.*

The beſt way to dreſs a Carp, &c.

§ 8. Take a Carp (alive, if poſſible) ſcour him, and rub him clean with Water and Salt, but ſcale him not, ſay ſome, others ſcale him, then open him, and put him with his Blood and his Liver (which you muſt ſave when you open him) into a ſmall Pot or Kettle, then take ſweet Marjoram, Thyme and Parſley, of each half a handful, a Sprig of Roſemary, and another of Savory, bind them into two or three ſmall bundles, and put them to your Carp, with four or five whole Onions, twenty pickled Oyſters, and three Anchovis. Then pour upon your Carp as much Claret-wine as will cover him, and ſeaſon your Claret well with Salt, Cloves, Mace, ſlic'd Nutmegs, and the rinds of Oranges and Limons; that done, cover your Pot, and ſet it over a quick Fire, till it be ſufficiently boiled; then take out the Carp, and lay it with the Broth in the Diſh, and pour upon it a quarter of a Pound of the beſt freſh Butter melted and beaten, with half a dozen ſpoonfuls of the Broth, the Yolks of two or three Eggs, and ſome of the Herbs ſhred; garniſh your Diſh with Limons, and ſo ſerve it up, and you'll find it a noble Diſh thus dreſt. But if you be not willing to

be at the charges of the Claret-wine, and for want of that, ſome White-wine, good Beer-vinegar and Water may ſerve very well inſtead of the Claret-wine. And if you cannot have the Oyſters and Anchovis, and thereby are enforc'd to omit them, it will notwithſtanding ſuch omiſſion, eat well. In the ſame manner, you may dreſs other Fiſh, only you muſt for others, omit the Blood and Liver: As Salmon, Pike, Trout, Pearch, Bream, Grayling, *&c.* thoſe that have Scales, being ſcal'd, and if you uſe Wine only, put in the Fiſh before the Liquor boils, otherwiſe afterwards.

The common way of boiling Fiſh.

§ 9. The common way of boiling Fiſh, is to draw them, cut out their Guills, and ſcale them, if Scales, and wipe them clean, and then to ſet over the Fire a Kettle, with as much Water as will cover the Fiſh, and to put therein ſome Beer-vinegar, good ſtore of Salt, ſweet Fennel, a bundle or two of ſweet Herbs, and when the Liquor boils very well up, to put in the Fiſh, but then let it boil very leiſurely, until the Fiſh be perfectly boil'd; then let the Water run off, and lay them on a hot Pewter Diſh, and ſet it on a Chafing-diſh of Coals, and when all the Water is perfectly run from the Fiſh, then ſerve them up with beaten Butter, ſome Parſley

boil'd

boil'd by it ſelf, then ſhred and mingled with the beaten Butter; let the Parſley not be too much boil'd, but greeniſh. The putting in Vinegar into the Water you boil Fiſh in, cauſes the Fiſh to harden, and ſo does Wine.

How to fry Eels.

§ 10. Firſt take the Eel, flea him, gut him, and waſh him clean, then cut him into the lengths of 3 or 4 inches a-piece, then ſet over Water in a Skillet or Poſnet, and let it boil, and therein you muſt put good ſtore of Salt, and ſome Fennel; when this Water boils, put in the pieces of Eel, and let them therein be almoſt half boiled, then take them out, putting them into a Cullender, then, after the Water is well drained, flour them with the fineſt Wheat-flower, and fry them as you are inſtructed to fry a Trout, at § 4. of this Chapter. This is a curious way for frying large pieces of Eel, and they will be very tender.

The beſt way of dreſſing a large Eel.

§ 11. Firſt waſh him in Water and Salt, then pull off his Skin below his Vent or Navel, and not much further; having done that, take out his Guts as clean as you can, but waſh him not, then give him three or four ſcotches with a Knife, and then put into his Belly and thoſe ſcotches, ſweet Herbs, (which are the

tops of Roſemary, ſweet Marjoram, Winter-ſavory, ſtripped Thyme, and pick'd Parſley) an Anchovy and a little Nutmeg grated, or cut very ſmall, and your Herbs and Anchovis muſt alſo be cut very ſmall, and mixt with good Butter and Salt; having done this, then pull his Skin over him all but his head, which you are to cut off, to the end you may tye his Skin about that part where his head grew, and it muſt be ſo tyed as to keep all his moiſture within his Skin; and having done this, tye him with Tape or Pack-thread to a Spit, and roſt him leiſurely, and baſte him with Water and Salt, till his Skin breaks, and then with Butter; and having roſted him enough, let what was put into his Belly, be mixed with beaten Butter for his Sawce.

The common way of roſting Eels.

§ 12. Take Eels, flea, gut, and wipe them clean, and cut them in pieces 4 or 5 inches long, put them on a ſmall Spit croſs-ways, and between each piece, put ſome large Sage-leaves, or Bay-leaves; then roſt them, and baſte them with Butter, and, when enough, ſerve them up with Butter, beaten up in three or four ſpoonfuls of boiling Water, and the Yolk of an Egg beaten in the Butter likewiſe, if you like Eggs. If you put the pieces of Eel in boiling Water and Salt, before you roſt them, and let them be a quarter boil'd, and then

then roſt them, they'll eat far better. Your Eels that are roſted, ſhould be pretty large.

VVhether you thus roſt, fry or broil Eels, par-boil them in Water, Salt, and ſome Fennel.

Spitch-cock, or broiled Eels.

§ 13. Take a large Eel, ſplat it down the Back and joynt the Bone, being drawn, and the Blood waſhed out, leave on the Skin, and cut it in four pieces equally, ſalt them, and broil them on a ſoft, clear Fire, free from Smoke, and baſte them with Butter, and being enough, and finely broil'd; ſerve them on a clean Diſh, with beaten Butter, or inſtead of Butter, you may baſte them with pure ſweet Sallet Oyl and Vinegar; and often in broiling, turn them.

Stewed Eels.

§ 14. Flay them, draw them, and wipe them clean, and cut them in pieces 3 or 4 inches long, and put them into a Poſnet or Skillet, with fair Water, a little White-wine, Verjuice, or, inſtead thereof, Beer-vinegar, as much altogether as will well cover them, Butter, ſome large Mace, Cloves, Pepper, ſlic'd Nutmeg, almoſt half a pound of Currans, Salt, two or three Onions, three or four Spoonfuls of Yeaſt or Barm, and a bundle of ſweet Herbs, *viz.* ſtripped Thyme, ſweet Mar-

joram, Winter-ſavory, Parſley, and one or two tops of Roſemary. Stew all theſe together leiſurely, till the Fiſh be very tender, then diſh them, and put to the Broth a quarter of a pound of Butter, pour it on the Fiſh, Sippet it, and ſerve it up.

Or you may ſtew them in an Oven, cutting them in pieces, and ſetting them on the end, being firſt ſeaſon'd with Pepper, Salt, Cloves and Nutmeg, and caſt in Currans amongſt them, and at the top of all, lay good ſtore of Butter, and ſome Sage-leaves, and put in four or five ſpoonfuls of White-wine, and ſo bake them, and ſerve them on Sippets; inſtead of White-wine, you may put three or four ſpoonfuls of Water, but it's not ſo good. You are to put them in a good glazed, earthen Pot for this way. And you may ſtew them thus without putting any other ſeaſon to them, but a very little Salt, and good ſtore of Butter and Sage-leaves at top.

How to make an Eel-pye.

§ 15. Firſt flay, gut, draw and wipe the Eel very clean, both inſide and outſide, with a Napkin; then cut the Eel into pieces 3 or 4 inches long, then take Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg all powder'd, and Pepper powder'd, but not ſo ſmall as the other Spices; mix all the Spices together with Salt, then ſeaſon the pieces of your Eel all over on each ſide, and

end

end very highly with the Spices and Salt. Then take fine Wheat-flower, and to every quart of Flower you uſe, boil three Ounces of good Butter in fair Spring-water, and make the Paſte for your Pye ſpeedily and quick therewith: Your Pye ſhould either be round, or long, like a Brick, but round at the ends. Then lay the pieces of Eel in your Pye, with ſtore of the beſt Currans (firſt well waſhed in Spring-water, and Cullender'd;) at top of all lay great ſtore of Butter, and cover it with the Lid, in which (if the Pye be to be eaten hot) make a hole, and pour therein 6 or 8 Spoonfuls of White-wine immediatly before you ſet it in the Oven, then ſet it in the Oven, and let it be very well baked and ſoaked. Let your Cruſt for the Pye be well made; for if either it drench, or run in the Oven, it will be worth very little. And if the Pye be to be eaten cold, it ſhould be eaten within 2 Days after baking, elſe it dries, and is not ſo good. Inſtead of the White-wine, you may put in 3, or 4 Spoonfuls of Water, but it's not ſo good as the Wine by much, though it will do well.

Some put boiling hot White-wine, and a little grated Nutmeg into the Pye, a little before it's drawn out of the Oven, and at ſetting into the Oven only a little fair Spring-water. You muſt not put any Wine in, if you intend it to keep, but Butter only.

To collar Eels to be eat cold.

§ 16. Take large Eels, flay, draw, and wipe them clean with a Linnen Cloth, part them down the Back, and take out the Bone, then take Thyme, Parſley, Sweet Marjoram, a little Winter Savory, and a few of the tops of Roſemary; mince them all ſmall, and mingle them with Nutmeg, Cloves, Ginger, Pepper, all beaten into Powder, and Salt; then ſtrew them on the inſide of the Eels; then rowl up the Eels like a Collar of Brawn, and put them in a clean Linnen Cloth tied at both ends, and bound cloſe with Pack-thread; and boil them in Water, ſome Beer Vinegar, and Salt, until they be very tender and enough: But let the Liquour boil before you put in the Eels; when boil'd enough, take them out of the Liquor, and let them and the Liquor be cold, and then put them in the ſame Liquor again, and you may therein keep them 5, or 6 Days, or more; and you may ſerve it either in collars, or in round ſlices with Sawcers of Vinegar.

But if you'll have the collar'd Eel to keep a Month, or more, put no Herbs to it, nor into the Liquor it's boil'd in, but very highly ſeaſon the Eels only with Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg, Pepper and Salt, without any Herbs amongſt them; then proceed as before, *&c.* boil the pickle they are kept in every 14 Days,

14 Days, and if it waſte, add Water and Vinegar to it at the boiling.

How to fry Pikes, or Jacks, not above 15 inches long.

§ 17. Let them firſt be fryed, as at § 4. of this Chap. brown and criſp; being fryed, drain all the Butter from them, and wipe the Pan very clean; then put them again into the Pan with Nutmeg, and Ginger ſlic'd, an Anchovy, Salt, and Claret-wine; fry them till half be conſumed, then put in a-piece of Butter, ſhake them well together with a minced Limon, or ſlic'd Orange, and diſh it, garniſh with Limon, or ſlic'd Orange, and rub the diſh with Shalot. You may fry other Fiſh thus if you like the way.

To dreſs a Pike by boiling it, &c.

§ 18. Take a large Pike, rub off all his ſlime with Water and Salt, cut away his Guills, and Fins; then gut and draw him, and caſt away his Blood, then put 3 parts Water, and one White-wine, and a Pint of Beer Vinegar, as much of all as will cover him, into a clean ſcoured Kettle, with a Handful of Salt, Cloves, and large Mace of each two Drams, two ſlic'd Nutmegs, one Limon-peel, four races of Ginger pared and ſlic'd, two Drams of whole Pepper, four or five great Onions

Onions whole, then make a Faggot of ſweet Herbs, *viz.* 6 tops of Roſemary, Sweet Marjoram, Thyme, Winter Savory, and Parſley, of each as much, all bound up together, put them with the Spices and Salt into the Kettle, and make them boil a-pace upon a quick and ſtrong fire, and when it boils at the height then put in the Fiſh, but afterwards let it boil very leiſurely; being well boiled, drain the Liquor from it, and lay it on a large diſh, lay on the Herbs and Spices on the Fiſh, with ſliced Limons and Limon-peels, beat up good ſtore of Butter in a Ladleful, or two of boiling Liquor the Fiſh was boiled in; Sippet it, and garniſh the diſh with ſearſed Manchet.

Or, Make Sauce with Butter beaten thick with ſlices of Limon, and ſome of the Liquor the Fiſh was boiled in, an Anchovy or two firſt diſſolved therein, and garniſh the diſh with beaten Ginger.

Or, For Sauce, take 3 or 4 Anchovis, diſſolve them in White-win, put them in a Pipkin with ſome ſlic'd Horſe-radiſh-root, groſs Pepper, ſome of the Liquor the Fiſh was boiled in, ſome pickled Oyſters and their Liquor, large Mace, one Onion, or two, the Sauce being well ſtewed, diſſolve and beat in the Sauce 2, or 3 yolks of Eggs, pour it on the Fiſh with ſome beaten Butter, the ſtewed Oyſters and ſlic'd Limon.

Or, Put ſome of the Liquor wherein the Fiſh

Fiſh was boiled, with 2 or 3 Anchovis cleanſed and minced, a little White-wine, ſome grated Nutmeg, and ſtew it on a Chafing-diſh, and beat it up thick with ſome ſweet Butter, the yolk of an Egg, or 2 diſſolved with ſome Vinegar, give it a walm, and put to it 3 or 4 ſlices of Limon; pour on the Sauce, and garniſh the Fiſh with ſlic'd Limons, the Spices, Herbs and boiled Onions.

Note, that you may dreſs a Salmon, great Trout, or Carp after the ſame manner, only for the Carp add his Blood and Liver, to the Liquor he's boiled in:

Note alſo, that you may boil ſeveral Fiſh in the ſame Liquor the firſt was boiled in, and it will be ſtronger and better, what is wanting for the ſecond, being repleniſhed with Water, Wine, and Vinegar.

How to roſt a Pike.

§ 19. Firſt open your Pike at the Guills, and if need be, cut alſo a little ſlit towards the Belly, out of theſe take his Guts and keep his Liver, which you are to ſhred very ſmall with Thyme, Sweet Marjoram, Parſley, and a little Winter Savory; to theſe put ſome pickled Oyſters, and ſome Anchovsi, two or three, both theſe laſt whole (for the Anchovis will melt, and the Oyſters ſhould not) to theſe you muſt add alſo a Pound of ſweet Butter, which you are to mix with the Herbs

Herbs that are ſhred, and let them all be well Salted (if the Pike be more than a yard long, then you may put into theſe Herbs more than a Pound of Butter, or if he be leſs, then leſs Butter will ſuffice;) theſe being thus mixt with a blade, or two of Mace, muſt be put into the Pikes Belly, and then his Belly ſo ſowed up, as to keep all the Butter in his Belly, if it be poſſible, if not, then as much of it as you poſſibly can, but take not off the ſcales; then you are to thruſt the Spit through his Mouth, and out at his Tail, and then take 4, 5, or 6 ſplit Sticks, or very thin Laths, and a convenient quantity of Tape or Filleting; theſe Laths are to be tyed round about the Pikes Body, from his Head to his Tail, and the Tape tyed ſomewhat thick, to prevent his breaking, or falling off from the Spit; let him be roſted very leiſurely, and often baſted with Claret-wine, and Anchovis, and Butter mixt together, and alſo with what moiſture falls from him into the Pan: When you have roſted him ſufficiently, you are to hold under him (when you unwind, or cut the Tape that ties him) ſuch a diſh as you purpoſe to eat him out of, and let him fall into it with the Sauce that is roſted in his Belly, and by this means the Pike will be kept unbroken, and compleat. Then to the Sauce that was within (and alſo that Sauce in the Pan) you are to add a fit quantity of the beſt Butter, and therein to

ſqueeze

ſqueeze the juice of three, or four Oranges. Laſtly, you may either put into the Pike with the Oyſters, two Cloves of Garlick, and take it whole out, when the Pike is cut off the Spit, or to give the Sauce a Hogo (let the diſh into which you let the Pike fall) be rubbed with it: The uſing, or not uſing of this Garlick is left to your diſcretion; becauſe it is offenſive to ſome.

To ſtew Carp, Bream, Mullet, or River large Roch, or Dace.

§ 20. Scale, cut out the Guills, waſh them clean, and wipe them dry with a clean Linnen Cloth, flower and fry them in good ſweet Butter, as before at § 4. of this Chap. Being finely fryed, put them in a Pewter-diſh with half a Pint of Claret-wine, grated Nutmeg, a blade or two of large Mace, an Anchovy ſhred, Salt, a little ſlic'd Ginger, 3, or 4 Cloves, ſome Butter, 3, or 4 ſlices of an Orange, ſet it on a Chafing-diſh of Coals (the Liquor being at boiling before you put in the Fiſh) then cover it cloſe, and ſtew it up quick, and turn it; being ſtewed, diſh it on fine carved Sippets, beat up Butter for the Sauce, with the Liquor the Fiſh was ſtewed in, and run it over therewith, laying on the Spices and ſlices of a freſh Orange; garniſh the diſh with dry Manchet, grated and ſearſed.

To

To roſt a Carp, Bream, Chub, or Tench.

§ 21. Take a Carp alive, guill, draw, waſh it, and let the ſcales be on, and take away the Gall and Milt, or Spawn, then make a Pudding with ſome grated Manchet, Almond Paſte, Cream, Currans, grated Nutmeg, raw yolks of Eggs, candied Limon-peel, or any peel, ſome Limon and Salt, make the Pudding ſtiff, and put it through the Guills into the Belly of the Fiſh, but fill it not too full, then roſt it in the Oven on 2, or 3 Sticks laid croſs a Braſs-diſh, turn it and let the Gravy drop into the diſh; being finely roſted, make Sauce with the Gravy juice of Orange, or Limon, and ſome Cinnamon; beat all up thick with Butter, and diſh it, putting the Sauce over it with ſlices of Limon.

To broil a Carp, &c. *with Sallet Oyl.*

§ 22. Take a live Cap, Guill it, draw it, and ſcrape off the ſlime, and wipe it dry with a clean Linnen Cloth both inſide and outſide, and lay it in a diſh with Vinegar, Claret-wine, pure good Sallet Oyl, Salt, and ſome ſtraight ſprigs of Roſemary, Sweet Marjoram, Thyme, and Parſley, ſome ſlic'd Ginger, Pepper groſly bruiſed, a few Cloves, and a little

little large Mace; let it ſteep there for about 2 Hours, then gently broil it on a clean Grid-iron, laid on a clear ſoft fire, and turn it often, and baſt it very often with the Liquour it was ſteeped in, and the Herbs. The Fiſh being well broiled, ſerve it on a clean diſh with the Liquour, Herbs and Spices it was ſteeped in, the ſame being firſt well boiled up together; with or without pickled Oyſter Liquour, lay the Spices on the Fiſh, and Herbs about the diſh, and run it over either with Butter beaten up with the juices of Oranges, or Limons; or, elſe with pure good and ſweet Sallet Oyl. Broil the Milt, or Spawn by it ſelf and lay it on the Carp.

Or, You may make a Sauce with pickled Oyſter Liquour, White-wine, grated Nutmeg, juice of Oranges, and a little Wine Vinegar all well broil'd together, beating up Butter therewith, and with the yolk of an Egg, and ſerve up the Fiſh therewith.

In the ſame manner you may dreſs Pike, Mullet, Roch, Dace, or Bream; only uſe not their Blood, Milt, or Spawn, and you may broil them either with their ſcales on or off: And in the ſame manner you may broil a Jole, Rand, Chine, or Slices of Salmon. In the ſame manner dreſs a Conger, cut in pieces and flead. And, note that you may chine, or ſlit the Carp, *&c.* through the middle, as a Salt-fiſh is uſually cut, then give him 3, or 4 ſcotches on the Back with your Knife, and

then proceed to your broiling, *&c.* Some before they broil a Conger thus, firſt very well par-boil it in Water with ſtore of Salt and ſweet Herbs, and then ſteep the pieces in the Liquor, *&c.* aforeſaid, and then broil it, *&c.*

To broil a Conger, or bake it.

§ 23. Flay it, draw it, and cut it in pieces, and wipe them clean, then par-boil very well the pieces of Conger in Water, with good ſtore of Salt, and ſweet Herbs, which are Parſley, Sweet Marjoram, Winter Savory, Roſemary, and Thyme; then lay the pieces of Conger on a clean Grid-iron, laid over a clear ſoft fire, turn the pieces often, baſting them with Butter, wherein are tops of Roſemary, ſtripped Thyme, pickled Parſley, and Sweet Marjoram ſhred, and mingled therewith; when broiled enough, ſerve them with Butter beat up in 4, or 5 Spoonfuls of boiling hot Spring-water, (which keeps the Butter from becoming Oyly and being Nauſeous) and the yolk of an Egg being alſo beaten therewith.

You may alſo bake a Conger, as before you are directed for an Eel, at § 15; but let the pieces before you ſeaſon them, be well par-boiled in Water, Salt, and ſweet Herbs, and when you ſeaſon them let them be very highly ſeaſoned. In the like manner you may bake them, in a well glazed Earthen-pot, the inſide and bottom

tom being firſt well dawbed with Butter.

How to bake a Lamprey.

§ 24. Flay it, draw it, and ſplit the Back on the inſide, from the Mouth to the end of the Tail, be ſure you take out the String in the Back, and truſs her round; par-boil it well in Water with ſtore of Salt and ſweet Herbs; then ſeaſon it, when cold, with Nutmeg, Pepper and Salt, put ſome Butter in the bottom of the Pye, and lay on the Lamprey with 2, or 3 great Onions, a few whole Cloves, Currans and ſtore of Butter; cloſe it up and bake it, and being well ſoaked and baked, fill it up with clarified Butter, ſtop it up with Butter in the vent hole, and you may firſt put it in ſome boiling Claret-wine, but then it will not keep long, nor if you put Currans in it.

You may bake either large Eel, Conger, or Lamprey, in a well glaz'd round Earthen-pot inſtead of a Cruſt; but rub on the inſide and bottom thereof, great ſtore of Butter, and ſeaſon the Fiſh, if to keep long, only with Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg, Pepper and Salt, and that pretty highly.

Let me here inſert, though improperly, rather than forget to tell you, That if at any time you boil Fiſh, and put only good ſtore of Fennel and Salt in the Water the Fiſh is

boiled in, and about a Pint of Beer Vinegar, or rather half a Pint, that you need not put your ſelf to the charges of Wine, to put in the Liquour you boil the Fiſh in, except it be on ſome extraordinary Occaſion; and put no more Water in than will cover the Fiſh, and let the Liquour boil well up before you put in the Fiſh; but after the Fiſh is put into the boiling Liquour, then let the Liquour boil very leiſurely, and ſimmeringly only, elſe the Fiſh will be apt to break and fall in pieces, and not be ſo truly boiled.

To make excellent French Bread to eat Fiſh with.

§ 25. Take a Gallon of fine Wheat-flower, and a Pint of good new Ale-Barm, or Yeaſt, and put the Flower with the whites of 6 new laid Eggs well beaten in a diſh, and mix with the Barm in the middle of the Flower, and alſo one Spoonful of fine Salt; then warm ſome Milk and fair Water, and put to it, and make it up pretty ſtiff, being well wrought and worked up, cover it in a Bowl, or Tray, with a warm Cloth till your Oven be hot, then make it up either in Rolls, or Faſhion it in little Wooden-diſhes, and bake it about an Hour in a quick Oven, and chip it hot. This is the very beſt way of making French Bread.

To

To ſouce a Carp, Pike, Bream, Tench, Trout, &c.

§ 26. Draw your Fiſh, but ſcale it not, and ſave the Liver of it, waſh it very well; then take one part of White-wine, and four parts of Water, boil them together with ſome whole Spice, as Cloves, Mace, ſliced Nutmeg, Salt and a bundle of ſweet Herbs, and when it boils put in your Fiſh, and juſt before it ſome Vinegar, for that will make it criſp; when the Fiſh is enough, take it up, and put it into a Tray, then put into the Liquour ſome whole long Pepper and races of bruiſed Ginger, and let the Liquour boil, ſtill, till it be enough, then take it off and let it cool, and when it's quite cold put in your Fiſh again, and therein keep it; but if to keep above 4, or 5 Days, you muſt not put in any of the ſweet Herbs, but omit them, becauſe they will quickly cauſe it ſour; and when you ſerve it, have ſome Saucers of Vinegar and Fennel. For ordinary uſe, you may omit the Wine, Cloves, Mace and Nutmeg; and only uſe Water, Vinegar, long Pepper, Ginger and Salt.

To ſtew Trouts, or other Fiſh.

27. Put two Trouts into a fair diſh with ſome White-wine, ſweet Butter, a little whole

Mace, and ſome ſliced Nutmeg, a little Parſley, Thyme and Savory minced, then put in an Anchovy, and the yolks of hard Eggs; when your Fiſh is enough ſtewed on a Chafing-diſh of Coals, betwixt two Pewter-diſhes, ſerve it on Sippets, and pour the Liquour over it; and you may add Capers to it, if you pleaſe. Garniſh with Limon and Barberries. Note, the firſt thing you are to do, is to gut, draw, guill and wipe the Fiſh, both inſide and outſide clean, with a clean Linnen Cloth, and then proceed as above.

To ſtew Carps in their own Blood.

§ 28. Take two fair Carps, and ſcour them very well from ſlime, with Water and Salt, then lay them in a diſh, and open their Bellies, and take away their Guts and Guills, and ſave the Blood and Rows in the Diſh, then put in a Pint of Claret-wine, ſome whole Spice (which is Cloves, Mace and ſliced Nutmeg) and ſome Salt, with a little ſliced Horſe-radiſh-root; then cover them cloſe, and let them ſtew over a Chafing-diſh of Coals, and when they are enough, lay them in a warm diſh rubbed with a Shalot, and Sippets laid in, then take a little of the Liquour, and therein diſſolve an Anchovy or two, and beat up Butter therewith, and pour it on the Fiſh, and ſerve it hot. Garniſh with Capers, Oranges, or Limons ſliced.

To

To boil freſh Salmon, &c.

§ 29. Take a Joll, or a Tail of freſh Salmon, then take Water, Salt, Vinegar, whole Spice, and Fennel, and boil them together, and when it boils put in your Fiſh, and when it is boiled, take ſome of the Liquour, an Anchovy or two, and a little White-wine; boil theſe together, and beat therein ſome Butter, and ſo diſh your Fiſh, and pour this over it; Garniſhing with Anchovis, or ſlices of Limon.

To ſtew Fiſh in the Oven.

§ 30. Take Soals, Whitings, or Flounders, and put them into a Stew-pan, with ſo much Water as will cover them, with a little Spice, Salt, White or Claret-wine, ſome Butter, two Anchovis, and a bundle of ſweet Herbs; cover them, and ſet them into an Oven not too hot; when they are enough, ſerve them in, laying in Sippets. Garniſh with Green Leaves, *&c.*

To make a ſallad with freſh Salmon.

§ 31. Your Salmon being boiled and ſouced, mince ſome of it ſmall with Apples and Onions, put thereto pure Sallet Oyl, Vinegar and Pepper, ſo ſerve it; Garniſhing with Limons and Capers. A Salt White-Herring thus dreſt,

is called a Pickled Herring, but the Herring is not to be boiled, but the Fiſh only pick'd from the Bones. In the ſame manner you may dreſs cold Turkey, or Capon, that is either boiled or roſted before.

To make a Carp, or Trout Pye.

§ 32. Take a Carp, and ſcale him, gut him, guill him, waſh him clean, and dry him with a clean Linnen Cloth, both inſide and outſide, then lay Butter in your Pye, and lay him therein with ſome whole Cloves, Mace, and ſliced Nutmeg, with 2 Handfuls of Capers, and Currans waſhed clean, and cullender'd; then mix ſome Butter with Salt, and lay it over, then cloſe it, and at the vent hole in the middle, put in ſome White-wine immediatly before it's ſet in the Oven, then bake it. This is good hot or cold.

To make an Eel Pye.

§ 33. Take the largeſt Eels, flay them, gut them, and cut them in pieces 3 or 4 inches long, having your Pye ready with Butter in the bottom, ſeaſon your Eel with Pepper, Nutmeg, Mace, and Salt, then lay them in with good ſtore of Currans, well waſh'd and cullender'd, and cover them with Butter; ſo cloſe it and bake it.

To

To make a Fricaſie of Eels.

§ 34. Take a midling ſort of Eels, ſcour them well, and cut off the Heads and throw them away, then gut them, and cut them into pieces about 3 inches long; then put them into a Frying-pan, with ſo much White-wine and Water as will cover them, then put in whole Spice, as Cloves, Mace, ſlic'd Nutmeg, and Pepper, a bundle of ſweet Herbs, and ſome Salt; then let them boil well, and when they be very tender, take them up, and lay them in a warm diſh, then add to their Liquour 2 Anchovis, ſome yolks of Eggs, and Butter, all well beat together, and pour over them, and ſerve them, *&c.*

To dreſs Neats-Tongues to carry with you.

§ 35. Take to every Pound of Salt you uſe finely beaten, one Ounce and half of Salt-peter, mix them, and rub your Tongues very well therewith, and cover them all over therewith, and as it waſts put on more; when they are hard and ſtiff they are enough; then rowl them in Bran, and dry them before a ſoft Fire, or hang them in the Chimney-corner; before you boil them lay them in Pump-water one Night, then boil them in Pump-water: The Salt-peter gives them the Red colour.

Obſervations on dreſſing of Fiſh.

§ 1. When you dreſs any Fiſh that have Scales on them, they are firſt to be ſcal'd, and that muſt be done very lightly and carefully with a Knife, for fear of bruiſing the Fiſh; then they are to be well waſhed in Salt and Water all the Slime off, then the Guills and Fins are to be cut away, then open their Bellies, and take out all their Guts, *&c.* very clean, then rub and wipe them very clean both inſide and outſide with a Linnen Cloth; then (if to fry) Flower them, *&c.* as at Sect. 4. *ante.*

§ 2. If your Fiſh have no Scales, then you muſt proceed as before, only the ſcaling cannot be done.

§ 3. If the Fiſh are to be boiled, the wiping with Linnen Cloath may be omitted, but after they are gutted and the Guills and Fins cut away, and ſcaled, if Scales be on them, let them be waſhed and rub'd with Water and Salt, and then to be boil'd, *&c.*

§ 4. When any Fiſh is to be boil'd, put it not into the Liquor before it has boil'd to the heighth for half a quarter of an Hour, and put it in when it boils, but after it hath been in the boiling Liquor, then let it boil very leiſurely till enough. Whether you roſt, fry, broil, boil, bake or ſtew your Fiſh, let it be done thoroughly and enough, though leiſurely: For if ſhort baked, roſted, boil'd, fryed, broiled

broiled or ſtewed, your Fiſh is ſpoil'd, and becomes both very unwholeſom and unpleaſant Meat.

§ 5. The broiling of Fiſh is a very excellent way, and you are firſt to give the Fiſh a ſcotch or two on the back (after they are ſcaled, if Scales, Guills and Fins cut away, gutted and wiped clean, or waſhed clean in Water and Salt) and then to ſtrew ſome Salt on the Fiſh, and lay it on a Grid-iron laid upon a ſoft and clear Fire, free from Smoke; you are to turn them, and baſt them with Butter, and they are to broil very leiſurely, and to be often turn'd.

§ 6. Theſe are accounted ſweet Herbs which are much uſed in boiling Fiſh, *&c. viz.* Sweet Marjoram, Winter Savory, pick'd Parſly, ſtripped Thyme, and tops of Roſemary. Ginger bruiſed is good to put in the Liquor Fiſh is boiled in, when you boil them, and ſo is long Pepper.

§ 7. The beſt ſeaſoning Spices for Fiſh are Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg, Pepper and Salt. The Roots of Horſe-radiſh ſliced is very good to put into the Liquour you boil Fiſh in, and good to uſe in Fiſh Sauce; it having a ſharp biting taſt, is the more proper for Fiſh. After you have put your Fiſh into the boiling Liquour, (which is to boil up to the very heighth at putting them in) let the Liquour boil then very gently, and leiſurely, otherwiſe the Fiſh will fall to pieces, and break.

Uſe

Uſe for want of Horſe-radiſh-root, ſliced Ginger, and long Pepper to boil Fiſh with.

§ 8. The beſt general Sauce for Fiſh is Butter, beat up with 3 or 4 Spoonfuls of boiling hot Spring-water, to keep it from becoming Oyly: And, you may ſcald, or ſomething more than half boil Parſley, and ſhred it, and mingle it with the Butter; or, inſtead thereof, put ſome ſlices of Horſe-radiſh-root into 4 or 5 Spoonfuls of Water, and let them macerate therein one Hour or two, then boil up the Water, and take out the Horſe-radiſh, and beat up your Butter in the Water, or which is beſt, diſſolve an Anchovy or 2, in 4 or 5 Spoonfuls of boiling Water; then beat up your Butter for Sauce with the boiling Water; and beat alſo the yolk of an Egg in the Butter, if you like Eggs.

§ 9. If you bake any Fiſh, let them be well ſeaſoned with Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg, all powdered ſmall, and Pepper groſly powdered, and Salt; and likewiſe put among the Fiſh ſtore of Currans, well waſhed and cullendered, and on the top of all, great ſtore of good Butter.

§ 10. Trouts, Chubs, Carps, Pearches, Breams, Roches, Daces, Gudgeons, and Graylings, ſhould be eat the very ſame day they are caught; elſe they are not ſo good by many degrees.

§ 11. Salmons, Pikes, Trouts, Carps, and River large Breams, of the biggeſt ſize, are accounted

accounted ſtately Fiſh: But Salmons, Trouts, Pearches of the River, Graylings, Gudgeons, and Ruffs are reputed the beſt Fiſh; next to them, the Pike, Carp, Bream, and Tench are of eſtimation; then the Roch, and Dace caught in Rivers; but the Barbel, and Chub are the leaſt valued, being thought to be the worſt of all freſh Water Fiſh; though good Cookery will make them excellent meat. The Loach is as pleaſant and good a Fiſh as any, and the Eel is ranked by ſome in the firſt Claſs for deliciouſneſs, but not wholſomeneſs.

§ 12. If you deſire your Butter for Fiſh Sauce to be thicker than ordinary, after you have beat up the Butter in Water, as aforeſaid, then beat the yolk of an Egg or 2 in Butter, and it reliſhes well.

§ 13. Finally, let me tell you that in the courſe of my Obſervations, I know amongſt all ſorts of Fiſh, none differ amongſt themſelves in taſt more than Eels; for I have eat of them, taken out of above 30 ſeveral Rivers, and amongſt the reſt of the *Thames*, *Severn*, *and Trent* Eel; yet none that I ever met with, were to be compared for goodneſs (although not very large) and deliciouſneſs of taſt, to the Eels caught in a ſmall River in *Lancaſhire* called *Irk*, which is compoſed of 3 ſmall Brooks, that have their conflux near unto *Middleton Hall*, where it aſſumes the Name of *Irk*, and thence deſcends through

Blakely.

Blakely and *Crumpſall*, &c. to *Mancheſter*; where under *Chetham*'s Hoſpital, it mingles its Waters with the *Irwell*, and thereunto pays the Tribute of its Name. Neither are the Inhabitants on its Banks partial in their Judgments, by reaſon of their Vicinity, but it's highly applauded for its excellent taſt, by Perſons meer Strangers, and ſuch as have the eſtimation of curious Pallats, and having often enquired of the Neighbouring People to it, what might be the reaſon, they have unanimouſly aſcribed it to the numerouſneſs of Fulling Mills that ſtand on that River; and ſay that the Fat, Oyl, and Greaſe ſcoured out of the Cloath, makes the Eels Pallatable and Fat, above other River Eels. And, perhaps their Opinion may come nearer Truth, than any Philoſophical reaſon, or cauſe can poſſibly be aſſigned: For I have frequently reflected on the Rivers running pretty ſwift, and upon a Canker'd, and very Maigre, Hungry Soil, Pebble Stones, and Gravel, and not to run ſlow, nor upon a Fat, Marly, or Chalky Soil: So conſequently the Water, not thereby impregnated with any Unctuous, Fattening Spirit. In the ſame River there are Trouts, though not ſo many as formerly, yet thoſe that are caught in it, are not inferior for goodneſs and excellency of taſt, to any that ever I eat of; notwithſtanding that I have eat of the *Derbyſhire* Trouts, caught in *Dove*, *Wye*, and *Lathkin*; and of Trouts taken in many

other

other Parts of *England*. But it's time I put a period to this Diſcourſe, and my Chapter of Cookery of Fiſh.

The *Romans* when arrived at their greateſt Glory and heighth of Luxury, had ſtrange and prodigious Exceſſes about their Fiſh, as well as in other things; they had Fiſh-ponds, out of which they raiſed 400000 Seſterces Annual Rent (each Seſterce being a Penny half Penny Farthing and half Farthing of our Sterling, and every Thouſand Seſterces 7 ℔ 16 s. 4 d. Sterling) which is about 3165 ℔ Sterling.

At their Feaſts they cauſed their Fiſh in an oſtentous manner to be weighed, and their Gueſts and Notaries in their Table-Books would inſert the weight of each Fiſh, which gave occaſion to *Horace* in his 2. l. Sat. 2. to ſay,

——— *Laudas inſane trilibrem*
Mullum.

And they would not bogle to give 1000 Seſterces for each Pound weight of a large Mullet, as appears by *Juvenal* Sat. 4.

——— *Mullum Sex millibus emit,*
Æquantem ſane paribus Seſtercia libris.

But another gave more, for, *Tres Mullos triginta millibus nummûm væniſſe graviter conqueſtus eſt*, ſays *Suetonius*, *Cap.* 34. of the Emperour

perour *Tiberius*, which is about 237 ℔ Sterling. They Exhauſted, by their Monſtrous Luxury, the Fiſh out of their own adjacent Seas, and had them brought a-far off, as appears by *Juvenal* Sat. 5.

Mullus erat Dominæ quem miſit Corſica, vel quem
Tauromenetanæ rupes, quando omne peractum eſt,
Et jam defecit noſtrum mare ——

And of the Lamprey to the like purpoſe, in the ſame Sat.

Virroni Murena datur, quæ maxima venit
Gurgite de Siculo ——

They were ſo Nice and Delicate, that they cauſed their Fiſh to be brought alive to their Tables, in Glaſs Bottles filled with Water, ſcarce believing them to be alive, unleſs they expired in their Gueſts Hands; *In cubili natant piſces, & ſub ipſa menſa capitur, qui ſtatim tranſferatur in menſam. Sen. Nat. Quæſt.* 3. 17.

Ad Mullum expirantem verſicolore quædam & numeroſa varietate ſpectari Proces gulæ narrant. Plin. 9. 17.

Nay, they pretended to ſuch curious Palats, that they could tell either by their Taſt, or Eye, on what Coaſt the Fiſh they eat on were bred, as appears by *Juvenal* Sat. 4. ſpeaking of *Curtius Montanus*.

—— *Cir-*

——*Circæis nata forent, an*
Lucrinum ad Saxum Rutinipove edita fundo
Oſtrea, callebat primo deprendere morſu,
Et ſemel aſpecti dicebat littus Echini.

Domitian the Emperour, could cauſe his Lampreys in his Fiſh-ponds at *Bajæ*, to come at his call, and they would lick his Hands, as teſtifies *Martial*, *lib.* 4. *Epig.* 30.

Piſcator fuge, ne nocens recedas,
Sacris piſcibus hæ natantur undæ,
Qui norunt Dominum, manumq; lambunt
Illam, qua nihil eſt in orbe majus
Quid quod nomen habent, & ad magiſtri
Vocem quiſq; ſui venit, citatus!

Which latter part is confirm'd by *Pliny lib.* 10. 70. *Spectantur & in piſcinis Cæſaris genera piſcium ad nomen venire, quoſdamq; ſingulos.* Monſieur *Bernier* in his Hiſtory of *Indoſtan*, reports the like of the great *Mogull.*

Antonia the Wife of *Druſus*, at *Baulos* hung Jewels like Ear-rings, at the Neck of a Lamprey which ſhe fancied; and *Hortenſius* the Oratour wept for the death of a Lamprey which he dearly affected, as teſtifies *Pliny* 9. 55.

The tender-heartedneſs of this Oratour, puts me in mind of the Piety of a Cardinal, who cauſed a Pompous Funeral to be made for a Dog of his which died, and at the Inter-

ment, Prieſt ſolemnly to Maſs, which argued the Cardinal to be a true Mahometan, (who believed Dogs to have Souls, and are very Charitable to them) as well as a Zealous Catholick in freeing his Dogs Soul from Purgatory.

CHAP. XL.

Treats of the Laws of Angling, and the preſervation of Fiſh.

§ 1. SInce Ignorance of the Laws excuſes none; it will not be amiſs to ſay ſomething of thoſe which concern the Angler, that he may have a little knowledge, how without Offence, to demean himſelf amongſt his Neighbours, when he goes about his Sport. And as Angling is of great Antiquity, ſo it's not meanly favoured, both by the Common and Statute Laws of this Realm. For by the Statute of 1 *Eliz. Cap.* 17. Prohibiting the taking of Fiſh with Nets, not of ſuch and ſuch a ſize; yet, by a *proviſo* therein, the Angler is at liberty to catch, either as big, or little as he can.

§ 2. Though this Recreation be ſimply in it ſelf Lawful; yet none can go on anothers Ground, without the Licenſe of the immediate

diate Owner, or the Law, but he's a Treſpaſſer; but if one have Licenſe to enter into a Cloſe, or Ground for ſuch a ſpace of time, there, though he practice Angling all that time, he is not a Treſpaſſer, becauſe his fiſhing is no abuſe of his Licenſe; but this is to be underſtood of running Streams, and not of Pits, Ponds, or ſtanding Pools: For, in caſe of a Pit, Pond, or ſtanding Pool, the Owner thereof hath a property in the Fiſh, and they are ſo far ſaid to be *piſces ſuos*, or *ipſius*, his, that he may have an Action of Treſpaſs for the Fiſh, againſt any one that ſhall take them without his Licenſe, though it be upon a Common, or adjoyning to the King's Highway, or adjoyning to another Man's Ground who gives Licenſe; but in caſe of a River, where one or more have *Libera Piſcaria* only, it is otherwiſe; for there the Fiſhes are ſaid to be *feræ naturæ*, and the taking of them with an Angle is not Treſpaſs; for that none is ſaid to have a property in them, till he have caught them: And then it is a Treſpaſs for any to take them from him. But, this is not to be underſtood of Fiſhes confined to a Mans own Ground by Gates, Grates, or otherwiſe, ſo that they cannot paſs away, but may be taken out, or put in at Pleaſure: For in that caſe the Party hath a property in them, as in the caſe of a ſtanding Pool. *Brook Title Treſpaſs, Fitz. Treſpaſs, F. N. B.* 86, 87, 88.

§ 3. None can erect a Park, Chaſe, or War-

ren but by the King's Licenſe under the great Seal; but Fiſh-ponds being a matter of profit, and encreaſe of Victuals, any Man may erect, *Coke 2 Inſtit.* f. 199.

§ 4. No Larceny can be committed of Fiſh, that be at their natural Liberty in Rivers, or great Waters; becauſe they are *Nullius in bonis*, but Larceny may be committed of Fiſhes in a Trunk, Net, or Pond; becauſe they are not at their natural Liberty, *Coke's 3 Inſtit.* f. 109, 110. *Stanford Plac. Cor.* f. 25. c. *Hales Pleas of Crown* 67. But I ſuppoſe it is not meant by theſe Judges, that the taking of Fiſh out of a Pond, where they continually live and breed, (for that ſhould ſeem to be only a Treſpaſs) ſhould be Felony, but I think they mean, that in caſe you put Fiſh (as many do) into a Net, or Trunk, and lay the ſame in a Pond, and to be ready for the Owners uſe; that, to take ſuch Fiſh is Felony.

§ 5. If a Man ſeiſed of a River, and do grant by Deed *Separalem Piſcariam* in the ſame, and make Livery and Seiſin *ſecundum formam Chartæ*, neither the Soil nor Water do paſs; for the Grantor may take Water there, and if the River become dry, he may take the benefit of the Soil. And if a Man grant *aquam ſuam*, the Soil ſhall not paſs, but the *Piſcary*. *Coke ſur. Litt.* f. 4, 6.

§ 6. One may preſcribe to have *Separalem Piſcariam* in ſuch a Water, and the Owner of the Soil ſhall not Fiſh there; but if he claim

com-

communiam Piſcariæ, or *liberam Piſcariam*, the Owner of the Soil ſhall Fiſh there, *Coke ſur. Litt.* f. 122. a.

§ 7. If one hath a Fiſh-pool, and grant me all the Fiſh therein, I may not dig the Ground to make a Trench, but muſt take the Fiſh with Nets, or other Engines, *Perk.* § 110.

§ 8. If one grant all his Fiſh in his Pond, by this is granted a power to come and Fiſh for them; but the Grantee may not hereby dig a Trench, and let out the Water to take the Fiſh, albeit they cannot be otherwiſe taken, *Fitz. Bar.* 237.

§ 9. One grants, *totam Piſcariam*, *ſalvo ſtagno molendini ſui*, by this the Piſcary paſſeth, and the *Stagnum*, and not the Piſcary, is excepted, *Plowd.* 161.

§ 10. Treſpaſs for fiſhing in his ſeveral fiſhing, the Defendant preſcribes to have a Common of fiſhing there, and may preſcribe to have that Appendant to Land, as well as Common Appendant, 4 *Ed.* 4. f. 29.

§ 11. One may have a free fiſhing in the Soil of another, but a ſeveral fiſhing muſt be in his own Soil, 4 *Ed.* 3. *Title Treſpaſs*, 222. 43 *H.* 3. *Title* 441. *B. Aſſize.* 17 *Ed.* 4, 6. 18 *Ed.* 4. f. 5. 18 *H.* 6, 29.

§ 12. There are but two Writs in the Regiſter for fiſhing, *viz.* in a ſeveral fiſhing, and a free fiſhing. *Vid.* Regiſter 34, 95, 103.

§ 13. There are diverſe manner of Forms of Writs for fiſhing, one *Quare, &c. in Viva-*

iis ſuis piſcatus fuit, &c. another *Quare, &c. in Separali Piſcaria ipſius A. piſcatus fuit, &c.* and another, as before, *Quare in libera piſcar. ipſius A. apud N. piſcatus fuit. F. N. B.* 88.

§ 14. Treſpaſs, *Quare clauſum fregit & piſces ſuos cepit*, without ſpecifying their Number, or Nature is bad, and inſufficient; and is not made good by the Verdict, although the Jury found for the Plaintiff, and although the Writ be ſo, yet the Declaration ought to reduce the generality of the Writ to certainty, and particularity, to which the Defendant may anſwer; ſo that a certain Judgment may be given, and if it was by Original, the Writ ſhall be General, but the Declaration ought to comprehend the Fiſh in certainty; and ſo are the Preſidents, *vid. Cok. 5. Rep. Plaiters Caſe.*

§ 15. Where any hath *Separalis Piſcaria*, there the Fiſh may be ſaid to be His, becauſe no Man elſe may take them whileſt they are within his ſeveral fiſhing, as appears by *Child* and *Greenhils Caſe.* And Treſpaſs lies for taking them, *Jones Rep.* 440.

§ 16. A ſeveral fiſhing is where one hath the Royalty, and oweth the Ground on each ſide of the Water, and no Man can have a ſeveral fiſhing, but in his own Soil, but a free fiſhing may be in the Soil of another Man, *Mich.* 17 *Ed.* 4. 6. *Paſc.* 18 *Ed.* 4. 4

§ 17. If I come upon another Man's Ground without his Licence, or the Licence of the Law, I am a Treſpaſſer; for which, the Own-

er

er may have an Action of Treſpaſs againſt me; and if I continue there after warning, by the Owner, or his Servant thereunto Authorized, the Owner, or his Servant, by his Command, may put me off by force, but not beat me, but in caſe of Reſiſtance by me: For then I (by reſiſting) make the Aſſault, but if he beat me, I not reſiſting, in that caſe he makes the Aſſault, and I may beat him in defence of my Perſon, and to free my ſelf from his Violence. *F. N. B.* Treſpaſs 9 *Ed.* 4. 21. 19 *H.* 6. 31. 65. 10 *Ed.* 4. 6. 5 *H.* 4. 9. 11. *H.* 6. 33. *lib. Intr.* 611. *Coke's* 2. *Inſt.* 316.

§ 18. If I leave my Angle-rod behind in another's Ground, he may take it Damage feaſant, but he can neither take it from my Perſon by force, nor break it, but he is a Treſpaſſer to me. *Vid. Reynel* and *Champernoon's* Caſe, *Croke's Rep. tempore Caroli, f.* 228.

§ 19. Our Anceſtors conſider'd, That, *Homo homini Lupus*, therefore they made that excellent Law of 43 *Eliz. cap.* 6. which provides, That in Perſonal Actions, in the Courts at *Weſtminſter* (being not for Land or Battery) when it ſhall appear to the Judges (and be ſo by them ſignified) That the Debt or Damages to be recovered, amount not to 40 s. or above, the Judges ſhall award to the Plaintiff, no more, but leſs, if they pleaſe, Coſts than Damages. This Law is inlarged by another made 22 and 23 *Car.* 2. *cap.* 9. wherein it's Enacted, That in all Actions of

Treſpaſs, Aſſault and Battery, and other Perſonal Actions, wherein the Judge, at the Tryal, ſhall not find and certify under his Hand, upon the back of the Record, that an Aſſault and Battery was ſufficiently proved, or that the Free-hold, or Title of the Land mentioned in the Declaration, was chiefly in queſtion, the Plaintiff in ſuch Action, in caſe the Jury ſhall find the Damages under 40 s. ſhall not recover more Coſts of Suit, than the Damages ſo found amount unto: And if any more Coſts be awarded, the Judgment ſhall be void, and the Defendant acquitted from the ſame, and may have an Action, and recover Coſts and Damages for ſuch vexatious Suit.

§ 20. Thus the Angler may ſee how to defend himſelf, in caſe any be quarrelſome and vexatious to him: However, there are many Statutes made for preſervation of Fiſh, and ſome very ſevere againſt any that takes Fiſh out of another's Pond, Pit, Pool, or ſeveral fiſhing: Therefore I ſhall give him their Abridgment, and caution him not to offend therein; for the Penalties in ſome are (and not without reaſon) very ſevere and ſharp: Therefore it will be moſt prudent not to Angle any where but in Rivers and Streams, in which none can claim a ſeveral Fiſhing, otherwiſe he'll ſubject himſelf, and become liable to great Puniſhments; and when he has occaſion, let him conſult the Statutes at large, for his more clearer ſatisfaction; in the interim

terim, he muſt content himſelf with the ſubſequent Abridgment.

§ 21. Treſpaſſors in Parks or Ponds ſhall give treble Damages to the Party grieved, ſuffer three years Impriſonment, be fined at the King's Pleaſure, and give Surety never to offend in the like kind again; and if they cannot find Surety, they ſhall abjure the Realm, or being Fugitive, ſhall be Outlawed. *Weſtm.* 1. *cap.* 20. 3 *Ed.* 1. *Coke's* 2. *Inſtit.* 199, 200.

§ 22. None ſhall take Salmons betwixt the 8 of *September*, and the 11 of *November*, nor young Salmons with Nets or other Engines, at Mill-pools, betwixt the midſt of *April*, and the 24 of *June*, in pain of having their Nets and Engines burnt for the firſt Offence; for the ſecond, to ſuffer a quarter of a years Impriſonment; for the third, a years Impriſonment; and after to have their Puniſhment increaſed according to the Treſpaſs; and in places where freſh Waters be, Overſeers of this Statute ſhall be aſſigned and ſworn to enquire of the Offenders. *Weſtm.* 2 47. 13 *Ed.* 1. *cap.* 47. *Coke's* 2. *Inſtit.* 477.

§ 23. No Fiſher ſhall uſe any Engine whereby the Fry of Fiſh may be deſtroyed, upon the pains mentioned in the Stat. of *Weſtm.* 2. *cap.* 47.

Salmons in *Lancaſhire* ſhall not be taken betwixt *Michaelmas* and *Candlemas*; Conſervators ſhall be ſworn to ſee this Statute obſerved, and the Offenders puniſhed, 13 *R.* 2. *cap.* 19.

§ 24. None

§ 24. None ſhall uſe any Net, Device or Engine whatſoever, to deſtroy, kill, or take the Spawn or Fry of Eels, Pike, Pickerel, Salmon, or of any other Fiſh, or take Salmons or Trouts, not being in Seaſon, nor ſhall take or kill Pikes ſhorter than 10 inches, Salmons than 16, Trouts than 8, or Barbels than 12, or more, or ſhall uſe any Engine or Device whatſoever, to take Fish, other than and except an Angle, or a Net or Tramel of 2 inches and an half mesh or mask; in pain to forfeit 20 s. the Fish ſo wrongfully taken, and the Net or Engine ſo wrongfully uſed.

All perſons having Juriſdiction of Conſervancy upon Streams or Waters, and Lords of *Leets* have power, upon the Oaths of Twelve Men, to hear and determin theſe Offences, and ſhall have all the Forfeitures which ſhall accrue thereupon.

The Steward of a *Leet* ſhall give this Statute in charge to the Jury, in pain of 40 s. to be divided betwixt the King and Informer.

Here if the Jury wilfully forbear to preſent Offences of this kind, the Steward or Bailiff ſhall impannel another Jury, to enquire of their Default, which being found, the firſt Jury ſhall forfeit 20 s. a-piece.

Upon Default of Preſentment within one year, in Leets, Juſtices of Peace in Seſſions, Juſtices of *Oyer* and *Terminer*, and Juſtices of Aſſize in Circuits, have power to hear and determin the ſaid Offences.

This

This Act ſhall not reſtrain the taking of Smelts, Loaches, Minnows, Bull-heads, Gudgeons, or Eels, with Nets or Engines formerly uſed, ſo that no other Fiſh be taken therewith, nor ſhall extend to abridge any former Priviledge of Conſervancy lawfully enjoyed, or fiſhing in *Tweed*, *Uſk* or *Wye*, or in Waters let to Farm by the Queen; ſo that the Spawn or Fry of Fiſh be not therein wilfully deſtroyed. Stat. 1 *Eliz.* 17.

§ 25. None ſhall unlawfully break, cut down, cut out, or deſtroy any Head, or Heads, Dam, or Dams, of any Ponds, Pools, Moats, Stagnes, Stews, or ſeveral Pits, wherein Fiſh are, or ſhall happen to be put in, or ſtored withal by the Owners or Poſſeſſioners thereof, or do or ſhall wrongfully fish in the ſame, to the intent to deſtroy, kill, take or ſteal away any of the ſame Fiſh againſt the Mind of the Owners, or Poſſeſſioners thereof, without Licence of the Owner, in pain to ſuffer three Months Impriſonment, and to be found with good Sureties to the good Behaviour, for ſeven years after.

The Party ſhall in Seſſions or elſewhere, recover treble Damages againſt the Delinquent, and upon ſatisfaction, ſhall have liberty to procure his Releaſe of the Behaviour.

Juſtices of *Oyer* and *Terminer*, Aſſize, Peace and Goal Delivery, have power to hear and determin theſe Offences.

Juſtices of Peace, upon the Offenders Acknow-

knowledgement in Seſſions, and Satisfaction to the Party grieved, ſhall have power to releaſe the Behaviour. *Vid.* Stat. 5 *Eliz. cap.* 21.

§ 26. None ſhall erect a Weir or Weirs along the Sea-ſhore, or in any Haven or Creek, or within five Miles of the mouth of any Haven or Creek, or ſhall willingly take or deſtroy any Spawn, Fry, or Brood of any Sea-fiſh, in pain of 10 lb to be divided between the King and Proſecutor; neither ſhall any fiſh in any of the ſaid places, with any Net of a leſs meſh than 3 inches and an half betwixt knot and knot (except for the taking of Smoulds in *Norfolk* only) or with a Canvas Net, or other Engine, whereby the Spawn or Fry of Fiſh may be deſtroyed, in pain to forfeit the ſaid Net or Engine, and 10 s. in Mony to be divided betwixt the Poor and Proſecutor, and to be Levied in Corporations by the head Officers; and in other places by Diſtreſs and Sale of Goods upon a Warrant of a Juſtice of Peace directed unto the Conſtable and Church-wardens of the ſame Pariſh for that purpoſe, 3 *Jac. cap.* 12.

§ 27. By the Statute of 17 *R.* 2. *cap.* 9. Juſtices of Peace ſhall be Conſervators of the Statute of *Weſtm.* 2. *cap.* 47. and 13 *R.* 2. *cap.* 19. and ſhall have powers to ſearch all Weirs, leſt by their ſtraitneſs, the Fry of Fiſh may be deſtroyed.

Juſtices of Peace ſhall have power to appoint and ſwear Under-Conſervators, to hear and

and determin Offences of this kind, and to puniſh the Offenders by Impriſonment and Fine, whereof the Under-Conſervator, which informs, is to have the half.

The Major or Wardens of *London* have like power in *Thames*, from *Stanes* to *London*, and in *Medway*, as far as the City Grant extends. 17 *R.* 2. *cap.* 9.

§ 28. If any perſon ſhall uſe any Net or Engine whatſoever, or ſhall take any Fish by any other Means or Device whatſoever, in any Pond or ſeveral Water, or ſhall be aiding or aſſiſting thereunto, without the Conſent of the Owner of the Water, and be convicted by Confeſſion, Oath of one Witneſs, within one Month, before one Juſtice of Peace, he ſhall recompence the Party ſuch Damages, and in ſuch time as the Juſtice ſhall think fit, not exceeding treble Damages, and pay to the Overſeer of the Poor, for the uſe of the Poor, ſuch Sum of Mony as the Juſtice ſhall think fit, not exceeding 10 *s.* and in Default of Payment, to be levied by Diſtreſs and Sale of Goods, and for want of Diſtreſs, to commit the Offender to the Houſe of Correction, for ſuch time as the Juſtice ſhall think fit, not exceeding one Month. Unleſs he ſhall be bound with one or more competent Surety's to the Party grieved, not exing 10 ℔. never to offend in like manner.

Every Juſtice of Peace before whom ſuch Offender ſhall be convict, may cut in pieces, and deſtroy all and every the Nets and Engines whatſo-

whatſoever wherewith the Offender is apprehended.

Every Perſon that finds himſelf agrieved with the Judgment of the Juſtice of Peace, may Appeal to the next General Quarter-Seſſions of Peace, whoſe Order and Determination thereof ſhall be Final, if no Title to any Land, Royalty, or Fiſhery, be therein concern'd.

This Act or any thing therein ſhall not take away, or Abridge His Majeſties Royalty, or Prerogative Royal. *Vid.* at large the *Stat.* of 22 and 23 *Car. Secundi, cap.* 25.

§ 29. Thus you have an Abridgment of moſt Caſes and Acts of Parliament that generally concern Angling or Fiſh; now let me briefly inſert one or two Caſes, and conclude this Chapter.

§ 30. Treſpaſs for entring and breaking his Cloſe and fiſhing in *Separali Piſcaria ſua*, and for taking *Piſces ſuos*, *ibid. viz.* 100 Eels, *&c.* after Verdict for the Plaintiff upon *Not Guilty* pleaded, and Damages entirely given. Moved in Arreſt of Judgment that the Declaration was ill; becauſe it ſays, *Piſces ſuos*, for he hath not any Property in the Fiſh until he takes them, and hath them in his poſſeſſion, being *feræ Naturæ*; and the ſame being matter of ſubſtance is not helped by the Verdict; but Judgment affirmed, *per curiam*, and agreed that being in, *Separali Piſcaria ſua*, it may well be ſaid, *piſces ſuos*, for there is not any other may take them, wherefore being taken out of his ſeveral Piſcary, and not,

extra

extra liberam Piſcariam ſuam, the Action is maintainable.

In a general ſenſe they cannot be ſaid, *piſces ipſius* but in a particular ſenſe they may; and a Man may have a ſpecial and qualified property in things, *feræ naturæ*, three ways, *ratione Infirmitatis*, *ratione Loci*, *& ratione Privilegij*, and in this Caſe the Plaintiff hath them by way of Priviledge. So for Deer in a Park, Conies in a Warren, Doves in a Dove-coat, the owner hath a ſpecial Property in them, and may ſay, *ſuos*; but if they be not in a Park, Warren, or Dove-coat, he may not ſay, *ſuas*, unleſs he add, that they were Domeſtick. *Vid.* Crokes *Rep. tempore Caroli f.* 554. *Child* and *Greenhills* Caſe. *Vid.* ſame Caſe *Rep. Marſh*, *f.* 48, and 49, and *Jones Rep. f.* 440, and *Hughs* Abridgment *f.* 1972 *C.S.* 26.

Marſh ſays, that the Action was brought for Fiſhing *in Separali Piſcaria ſua*, without mentioning the Cloſe, and ſo doth *Jones* in his *Rep.* 440. Thus you may perceive what care and reſpect our Fore-fathers had to the preſervation of Fiſh, and how many Statutes the wiſdom of many Parliaments multiplied to that end (beſides many others about Sea Fiſh which I do not ſo much as mention) that every one might reap the benefit or pleaſure of their own Fiſh, and ſufficient ſtore be preſerved from the Roguiſh Tricks of Raſcally and looſe Fellows; whoſe puniſhments, if they be taken Offending, are not mean, and ſlight, and

one

one would think ſufficient to deter them from Treſpaſſing in that Nature.

Quæritur, ut creſcunt tot magna Volumina Legis?
In promptu cauſa eſt, creſcit in orbe dolus.

I had thought to have given a Deſcription of the prime Rivers in *England*, and *Wales*, and of the Fiſh they are Furniſhed with; but in the attempting thereof I found my ſelf not a little deceiv'd by the difficulty I met with, and that the ſame was not to be accompliſhed by any other way than Travel: the Account our Chorographers give thereof being ſo lame and imperfect, that it had been ridiculous to have inſerted any thing out of them; beſides, to have deſcribed a few particular Rivers only, within the narrow compaſs of my own knowledge and experience, and omitted many others far more meriting, had been injurious, and a general Deſcription uſeleſs: therefore ſince I am not ſo able as willing to gratify the Angler herein, I Queſtion not but to have my Pardon paſs with more eaſe, than if I had troubled him with a rude and inſignificant Diſcourſe thereof.

However, *en paſſant*, I will tell you that there are reputed to be in *England* and *Wales* 594 Rivers, whereof *England* claims 350, and *Wales* 244, for her ſhare, but how the number comes to be ſo great, I cannot conceive, unleſs ſome Rivulets are taken into the Accompt, and then the number ſhould ſeem to be greater.

As

As to their diverſities, their ſituations, their diſtance and remoteneſs, their nearneſs or vicinity to the Sea, ſo they are different both in the qualities of their Water, as alſo their various kinds and ſpecies of Fiſhes: thoſe that have a more immediate intercourſe with the Ocean, participate of its influences, and have the ſame Viciſſitudes, the ſame fluxes and refluxes, the ſame Salt-water, and the ſame ſort of Fiſh which frequent the Sea where they diſembogue themſelves; theſe are too deep to be fathom'd by the cordage of a Line, but the more inland, and further diſtant from the common receptacle of Waters, are the Rivers moſt proper for the Anglers Divertiſement. The principal Rivers in *England*, are the *Thames*, *Severn*, *Trent*, *Tine*, *Tees*, *Tweed*, *Medway*, *Dove*, *Iſis*, *Tame*, *Willey*, *Avon*, *Lea*, *Irwel*, *Lon*, *Nen*, *Welland*, *Derwens*, *Calder*, *Wharf*, *Nid*, *Don*, *Swale*, *Hull*, *Wharfe*, *Ouſe*, and *Are*. Principal Rivers in *Wales*, are the *Dee*, *Wye*, *Conwy*, *Tivy*, *Chedlaydy*, *Cluid*, *Uſk*, *Tovy*, *Taff*, *Dovy*, &c. But the Maps will give you a better proſpect than any can by enumerating them, therefore let every ingenious Angler, have a large Map of *England*, or at leaſt of the particular County where he uſually Angles, and thereby he may with delight view and obſerve the Springhead, ſite, diſtance, various paſſages, windings, turnings, and confluxes, of each particular River, with what Towns, Caſtles,

Churches, Gentlemens Houſes, and places of Note are near or on their Banks, and make, as you Angle, Remarks proper to the nature of each.

Several Rivers in *England* run under Ground and then riſe again, as a Branch of the *Medway* in *Kent*, the *Mole* in *Surrey*, *Hans* in *Staffordſhire*, the little Rivers *Alen* in *Denbyſhire*, and *Deveril* in *Wiltſhire*: The River *Recall* hides its ſelf under Ground, near unto *Elmſley* in the North riding of *Yorkſhire*. At *Aſhwell* in *Bedfordſhire*, riſe ſo many ſources of Springs that they ſoon drive a Mill. At *Chedder* near *Axbridge* in *Somerſetſhire*, is a Spring that drives Twelve Mills in a quarter of a Mile. In the midſt of the River *Nen*, South of *Peterborough* in *Northamptonſhire*, is a deep Gulf call'd *Medeſwell*, ſo cold, that in Summer no Swimmer is able to indure it, yet not Frozen in Winter, but of theſe enough.

CHAP. XLI.

Is a Supplement to the 23, *and* 37 Chap. *aforegoing.*

BEcauſe the Pike is ſo noble a Fiſh, and of ſuch magnitude, and that many Rivers are plentifully ſtored therewith; it's not inconvenient, if I by way of Supplement make

make a more particular Diſcourſe of him than before, which I doubt not but will be both acceptable, and delightſome to many.

§ 1. You are told before that the Pike is very voracious, even ſo greedy that he'll devour thoſe of his own Species, only he ſeldom adventures on a Pearch, unleſs hunger compels him; becauſe of the Fins and Prickles on the Pearches Back, which are not a little offenſive to his Maw, therefore a Pearch is the worſt Bait for him, by reaſon the Pike has an Antipathy againſt him, for not being ſo eaſily devour'd as others.

§ 2. The Shape or Figure of the Pike's Body is very long, his Back broad, and almoſt ſquare, altogether equal to the loweſt Fins; his Head is lean and very bony, his Snout is long like the Bill, or Beak of a Gooſe, and his lower Jaw is far longer than his upper, and in it are placed many Teeth, not orderly diſpoſed, but of diverſe ranks and orders, his Eyes are of a Golden Colour, and very quick-ſighted, (as are all ſorts of Fiſh) his Belly is always White, but his Back and Sides are of a Black ſpeckled with Yellow, if a fat one, but the Sides are White and Pale in a thin, lean Fiſh, his Ventricle is large and capacious, and his Throat ſhort; as for his Age, there is diverſity of Opinions; ſome ſay he'll live 40, or 50 Years, others but 10. Some grow faſter, ſome ſlower, according to the diverſity of their Water, and Feed. River Fiſh grow much

faſter than Pond Fiſh, unleſs the Pond be very large, and have a good Stream run through it; freſh Water being a great forwarder of Fiſhes feeding. Jacks and Pickerels grow faſter than great ones: One ſpawn'd in a clear ſpringing Brook in *March*, will be 18 inches long the next *March*; a River Pike grows faſt till he arrive at 24, or near 30 inches in length, then he ſtands a little more at ſtay, and ſpreads himſelf in thickneſs; after he'll grow a long time, and be much longer growing to his full bigneſs, (which is about 45 inches in length) from 30 inches, than he was encreaſing to that proportion. He's a great breeder, and ſpawns about mid *March*, unleſs the Spring be mild and forward, and then about the end of *February*.

§ 3. In ſtoring your Ponds, put in all your Jacks of a bigneſs; for a Pike of 30 inches ſcruples not to devour one of 15. Some are apt to grow more in length, others in breadth, and thickneſs, which latter ſort are beſt fed, and firmeſt Fiſhes; for a lean, ſlender Pike, though he ſeem to advance in length; yet is commonly a waſter, and in a decaying condition; by reaſon of ſome outward Wound or Hurt by the Otter, or ſome ſtronger of his own kind, or is inwardly pricked by the Hook, or ſome other Caſualty; yet he'll live and be as hungry and greedy as ever. A ſtill, ſhady and unfrequented place, thick ſhelter'd, where he receives no diſturbance at his feeding, and

where

where a Ditch joins upon a River, or a Spring, or ſmall Brook run into it, or a ſolitary and retired corner, not beaten with Fiſhers, or his flattering Friends, are commodious and pleaſant for his growth.

§ 4. The Male is generally in ſeaſon, firm, delicious and inviting to the eater, though at worſt from 15 of *February* until beginning of *April*, but the Females are out of ſeaſon from about *Candlemas* until mid *May*, but in ſeaſon the reſt of the Year, eſpecially in *Auguſt*, *September*, *October* and *November*. The middle ſize are better than either the greater, or ſmaller ones, which latter always eat looſe and waſhy, by reaſon of their quick growth. One taken fat out of a River is far better and ſweeter, than one fed fat in a Pond, except he be taken out of the Pond, and put into a running Stream to clear a while before eaten.

§ 5. A thicker ſort of Water, if it be not fowl and muddy, is of a better conſiſtency, and the parts better diſpoſed for Nutrition, than thoſe of a more thin and rarified Subſtance: For Fiſh cannot live by pure Water, or by reſpiration, or ſucking in thoſe ſlender particles of his beloved Element, without the concurrence and aſſiſtance of ſome groſſer and terrene Qualities, which are intermingled with thoſe liquid Bodies; this is the reaſon why Fiſh are the fatteſt, though not altogether the ſweeteſt, that live amongſt Weeds and thick Fog, living and thriving with a little more re-

freſhment, than what they receive from the fatneſs the Soil imparts. Fen Fiſh brought up into clear and higher Waters, will thrive much, and be ſweeter; but whether the contrary, is a *Quær.*

The Pikes Haunt, and Harbour.

§ 6. His hold is uſually amongſt, or near a Bank of Weeds, as of Flags, Bull-ruſhes, Candocks, Reeds, or of Green Fog: However, he often ſhoots out, and ſports in the clear Stream, taking his pleaſure in the middle of the Water, and in Pools full of Fry. If the whole River be weedy, you'll be at a loſs to find out his Quarters, but if the River be free from Weeds, only here and there a Bank, or Bed of Bull-ruſhes, you may ſafely conclude thoſe are his retirements and baiting places. If your River conſiſts of Pits, have a care to the top and bottom thereof; he's ſometimes caught in the middle, but his principal Haunt is at the bottom of the Pit or Pooll; and uſually where one is taken at the upper part, another hath been found at the foot or bottom of the Pooll. In Winter, and cold Weather he lies deeper and nearer bottom; but as Summer approaches, and the Weather becomes warmer, he ſhoots into more ſhallow places: In *March* they ſhoot into the Scours to ſpawn, but after *April* begins, he lies in ſhallows.

In a clear, calm, hot, ſultry, gleamy Day, he

he gets to the ſurface of the Water, and then a ſnare is moſt proper: For offer him a Bait, and he'll immediatly retreat to his loweſt retirements.

A Ford that is clear and gravelly at the bottom, eſpecially having a Pooll, or Pit adjoining to it that is indifferently deep and weedy, is a probable place; for though they generally affect a deep Water, yet they'll get near to a Ford or Shallow, where they'll delight themſelves, and ſport with the ſmall Fry. So are Scours and Pits, or Poolls near Mills, either above or below them, commonly well ſtored with Fiſh, ſo is a Mill dam that is deep and weedy.

Rivers that are ſtraight and level are not ſo good to Fiſh, as thoſe that are crooked and have many corners and turnings; for Fiſh will get into thoſe Creeks and Channels, and hide themſelves in their private apartments. If the Water be narrow you may fiſh both ſides, and ſooner chop upon them, and it's more pleaſant Trowling; but where it's broad and deep, there is more uncertainty in their Haunt and Harbour, ſo that they are not eaſily found, or light upon.

If they bite at all, they commonly take the Bait at firſt throw; therefore it's needleſs to caſt the Bait above once, or twice at the moſt in the ſame place.

He delights much in a middle retirement, the River being about 4 foot deep, is a good

proportion for the Trowler: For if deeper, they are more difficult to ſtir, and harder to find; and if ſhallower, apt to ſee you, and ſhun your Bait.

Small Jacks will often lye not above one, or two foot from the top of the Water, and ſometimes on the very ſurface; at ſuch time keep at a diſtance, and come not nigh the River till the Bait is in.

Trowling time.

§ 7. *February*, if it be a dry ſeaſon and open, is one of the beſt Trowling Months. In *March* they ſpawn and are Sick; therefore bite ill, and it's not ſo good for the Trowl as ſnap; for you'll ſcarce take one then at Trowl, except it be a Male Fiſh. *April*, and until the middle of *May*, eſpecially if it be cold and windy, is propitious to the ſport, becauſe the Weeds which have couched all Winter, begin then to erect their heads. From mid *May* until *September* it's bad Trowling, by reaſon of the Weeds; but if you'll Trowl in the Summer, let the Day be dark, gloomy and windy, and rather uſe the Snap than Trowl, though either way you'll take more Weeds than Fiſh. From the beginning of *September* until *Martinmas*, if you be not diſturbed with Rain or Floods, eſpecially *October*, is good; becauſe the Weeds then fall and rot, and the Fiſh are fat with the Summers feed. After a glut of

Rain,

Rain, or ſome great Showers, a Pike never bites well, nor whilſt the Water is thick, and any thing muddy. Pikes bite beſt in clear Waters and windy Days, about three in the Afternoon. Mornings and Evenings are beſt in Summer, becauſe Fish towards Noon, get to the top of the Water, and are then more mindful of Play, than Meat. In a clear, calm, hot, ſultry or gleamy day, in Summer, they get to the top of the Water, and then a Snare is more proper than a Bait. In *February*, *March*, *October* and *November*, one part of the day differs not much from the other, but about Noon is beſt. All Winds are good except the Eaſt. A Pike will feed to that exceſs and fulneſs, that he cannot gorge your Bait, yet will he riſe and ſhew himſelf, and make many offers, ſo that you may often catch him with the Snap.

Baits for the Pike.

§ 8. Roch, Dace and Bleak are the prime Baits, eſpecially if the River be any thing muddy, or the Day dark and cloudy; becauſe they are bright, and ſhine in the Water, and Roch and Dace are the hardeſt, and will endure the longeſt on the Hook. In a bright Day, and clear, tranſparent Water, a large Gudgeon is the beſt Bait, and is very ſweet, though tender, and will ſoon burſt; alſo Trouts, Chubs and Jacks that are ſmall, and Minnows and Loaches that are large, are very

very good Baits, ſo is a piece of an Eel; for it's very ſweet to him; and in Hay-time, a yellow, bright Frog is very good, eſpecially for the ledger Bait. A Pearch is the worſt Bait, becauſe a Pike has an Antipathy againſt him, but if neceſſity compel you to uſe him, cut off all his Fins and Prickles, and ſcrape off his Scales, and it's better for Snap than Troll, and in clear Water, than dark.

Let all your Baits for Pike, be fresh and ſweet, and alive the ſame day you uſe them; for with ſtale Baits you'll have ſmall ſucceſs, eſpecially in Summer, or at Trowl or ledger Bait. Sometimes with one fresh Bait, you may take three or four Jacks, or more; for a Fish that bites greedily, and ſwallows the Bait preſently, does not tear it ſo much, as one that plays with it in his Mouth, and then leaves it; for a Bait is not much worſe for being chopt, and full of holes, ſo that it hang well on the Hook, and the Lead be not ſeen: For one Pike will feed well after another, and the Bait will ſtill be the ſweeter, the more it is bitten, if it be not uſed ſo long to be Water-ſopt. One fresh Bait will wear out two or three ſtale ones. But for the Snap, if they look bright, and gliſter in the Water, it's not material whether they be old or new; for any thing that may affect the Eye, may be uſed at Snap, which is the reaſon that Artificial Gudgeons and Roches are made to uſe at Snap, but are worth little for the Trowl.

Some

Some there are that fish with their Baits alive, having ſhort Hooks faſhioned accordingly with more Joints, and without Lead, and uſe it as a ledger Bait, only keeping it a foot from the bottom, with a Float of Cork, which is a very murthering way.

If you have a Caſt-Net, you may catch Baits in one day, that will ſerve a quarter of a year; chooſe out thoſe you like, and put them in a Trunk with holes in it, and lay the ſame in a Pond.

If you trowl with a middle ſized Gudgeon, large Minnow or Loach, you may catch Pearch as well as Pikes.

If you'll uſe a ledger Bait for Pike, as ſome will lay forty or fifty, and begin to draw at the firſt was laid, let it be kept a foot from the bottom with a Float; and a live Bait is better than a dead one, and that way, though the Pearch be the worſt Bait, yet he'll live longeſt on the Hook; and is to be baited thus, *viz.* having cut off his Fin on his Back without hurting him, with a ſharp Knife, betwixt the head and the Fin on the Back, cut or make an Inciſion, or ſuch a Scar as you may put the arming Wire of your Hook into it, with as little bruiſing or hurting the Fiſh as poſſible, and ſo carrying your arming Wire a-long his Back, into or near the Tail of your Fiſh, betwixt the Skin and the body of it, draw out the Wire or Arming of your Hook at another Scar near to his Tail, then tye him about

about it with Thread, but no harder than of neceſſity to prevent hurting the Fish. And ſome uſe a kind of Probe to open the way, for the more eaſy entrance or paſſage of your Arming or Wire: And thus bait your ledger Bait for Pike, and keep it a foot from the bottom; for a Pike will not ſo ſoon take any Bait on the Ground, as if it ſwim about a foot or more from the bottom.

To bait a Frog for the Pike, do it thus; *viz.* put your arming Wire in at his Mouth (which you may do betwixt *May*-day and the end of *Auguſt*; for afterwards his Mouth cloſes up) and out at his Guills, and then, with a fine Needle and Silk, ſow the upper part of his Leg with only one ſtitch to the arming Wire, or tye the Frogs Leg to the upper joint of the Wire. Uſe him gently, and perform your operation neatly, and he'll live the longer on your Hook.

Hooks for the Pike.

§ 9. There are ſeveral ſorts of Pike-hooks both for Snap, and Pouch or Trowl; your Spring-hooks are excellent for Snap, and ſtrike ſure, yet the ordinary plain Snap-hook will as often miſs as hit. Of Pouch-hooks there are many faſhions, ſome with a round bent, almoſt after the Figure of a Pearch-hook, which may be good; but there are another ſort having a ſloping bent outwards, turning

turning a little inward under the Beard, yet withal, bending towards the Lead at the point of it, which point muſt be very ſharp, which is the better Hook; the ſingle Hook ſtrikes as ſure, and is as good for the Trowl, if not better, than the double Hook, only for a great Bait, the double Hook is beſt.

There are two or three ſorts of double Hooks, beſides that of the Snap, ſome of them are flat, and are bent back to back, another ſort there is that is more ſloped, and the bents cloſer together, others there are that have a round bent much after the form of the Snap, which muſt always have a full bent, and very large.

Hooks uſed for ledger Baits, with live Fiſh, are not leaded, but rather ſhorter than the other, and the Wire hath uſually more joints; but all other Hooks are neatly leaded on the ſhank; let them be made of well temper'd Steel, that will rather break, than ſtand bent.

Lines for the Pike.

§ 10. The Trowling-line ought to be ſtrong, and either of green or Sky-coloured Silk, and thirty yards long, but the Line for Snap may be about ten yards long; next unto Silk fine Spun, Hemp Yarn Died Green, or Sky-colour, 4, 5, or 6 fold neatly Twiſted; but for a Ledger Bait Shoomakers Thread well Twiſted is good enough. Let your Lines always

be

be dried immediately after you have uſed them. Snap Line muſt be ſtronger than the Trowling Line. As for the managing of the Line and fitting it for your ſport, you may winde it upon a Roll that turns upon a Ring of Iron, with your Finger in it, having no more in your Hand than you make uſe of at preſent; ſo that if occaſion be you may unwind it at your leiſure.

The Rod or Pole for the Pike.

§ 11. The Pole ſhould be about 3 yards and a half long, and made either of Cane, dried Withy Bark't Fir, or dried Hazle, with a Ring at top for the Line to run through, and the Pole muſt be ſtronger for Snap than Trowl: for Trowl you may take off your Hazle top, and put on a Ring, and uſe it, and ſo it will ſerve either for Pikes or other Fiſh.

How to Bait the Hook, and play the Bait at Trowl.

§ 12. Your Baits being ready, take a couple of Hooks at leaſt with you, and you may Bait them before you ſet out, eſpecially in cold Weather: the way then to Bait your Hook for Trowl is thus, *viz.*, firſt thruſt your Wire into the Mouth of the Fiſh quite through his Belly, and out at his Tail, ſome have beſides the Wire a Knitting-needle on purpoſe,

but

but if the firſt joint of the Wire be ſtiff and ſtrong, it may very well be done with that; the point of the Hook muſt be even with the Belly of the Bait, for if it hang on either ſide, it may hinder and check the Pike, who will probably lay his Mouth upon it, for when he chops croſs the Fiſh, he may be pricked, and ſo leave the Bait; when you have ſo put through the Fiſh, then tye the Tail of the Bait faſt to the joint of the Wire with ſtrong Thread, which will both make it hang ſtraight on the Hook, and preſerve it from outward violence, for if it be not well faſtned, the Weeds will ſoon tear it down to the Guills, and ſo ſeparate the Hook from the Bait; ſome faſten it with a Needle.

The very beſt and chief way of faſtning your Hook to the Line is with a Swivel.

How to Trowl.

§ 13. Thus fixed drop in your Bait firſt even before you, then caſt it on each ſide to find him, and let the third throw be before you into the middle, afterwards caſt about all places where you conceive your Game lies, or any where you can Fiſh without Annoyance of Weeds, Roots, *&c.* for if the place be Weedy, *&c.* you cannot caſt out ſo far, but only drop in the Bait, here and there by the ſides, and in holes that are clear and deep. The Weeds are very troubleſome and great Enemies;

Enemies; for if the ſmalleſt bit of Weed hang on your Hook or Bate, a Pike will be very ſqueamiſh to Gorge it.

Having caſt out a fair throw, it may be 12 or ſometimes 20 yards, (which may eaſily be done if the River requires it,) let it firſt have a little time to ſink, then feel it by drawing gently towards you; for a Pike often takes it at firſt ſight before it get to the bottom, and if you ſnatch it haſtily you both diſcourage him and deprive your ſelf of your expected ſport; after you have given it an eaſy motion towards you, let it have the liberty of ſinking again, then draw it ſlowly and ſoftly towards you, for if you jerk it quickly and haſtily, he has not time to lay hold on the Bait: for he's ſo quick-ſighted that he'll often ſhoot himſelf from the fartheſt ſides, and at a great diſtance, towards your Bait; when the Bait comes near the Bank, then play it longer there, firſt deep, for the deeper the better, if cold Weather, afterwards raiſe it higher and higher, by degrees, till you have it ſo near the top that you ſee it gliſter; then take it out, not haſtily, becauſe he often takes it near the top.

When a Pike is once ſtir'd he'll lye watching for the Bait, and catch greedily at it, if he does not ſee you; therefore keep at a little diſtance upon the Bank; for they'll often take it at the very top, and ſometimes leap out of the Water at it, but then they are ſo affrighted that they'll bite no more.

Caſt

Caſt not your Bait above once in one and the ſame place, for they are ſo greedy, that they commonly imbrace the firſt opportunity to lay hold on the Bait.

Some Trowl keeping the Bait at leaſt a Foot by a Float from the bottom, but that is better for a Ledger Bait, becauſe of the Weeds; neither is it good to Trowl without a Pole by caſting your Bait with your Hand; when he has taken your Bait he'll run to his hold, and there lye till he has pouched it, and then range about for more, then Hook him with a ſmall jerk, and give him Line and make your pleaſure to your content.

If he takes the Bait greedily at bottom, and marches up the Stream with it, or ſtrike croſs the River towards his hold, he will then probably lye ſtill a little time while he is pouching, as you may feel him check and tug at it, from which place if he goes quick, you may let him alone a little longer; for you may come to loſe all for want of 2 or 3 Minutes forbearance; if he hath lain ſtill a while the ſecond time, and then runs with it, then draw your Line ſtraight, and with your Pole give him an eaſie ſtroke, and ſo feel him by degrees, till you come to ſee him, but if he be furious and reſiſt much, let him have Line enough, and give him his full ſwing; he'll be very angry at firſt, till pacified by loſing his Strength.

If he be large he'll be ſtrong and unruly,

perhaps (for madneſs) leap out of the Water aſſoon as prick'd, but if ſmall and light, you'll ſcarce feel him.

You muſt be cautious in Landing a great one, for if the River be broad, and your Line ſhort, you may eaſily loſe him; for he'll launch out with ſuch Violence, that though he cannot break your Line, yet he'll tear out his hold, or own Entrails if he be there hung.

If he take the Bait at top and runs fiercely with it into the deep, and there lye ſtill for ſome time, and you perceive that he does not pouch it, your Remedy for that is to ſtir him a little, and make him run, and be more eager of it, than after he hath lain ſtill, and runs with it again; there is no danger of loſing that Fiſh: For when they leave it, they commonly throw it up the firſt time they lye ſtill: Sometimes he'll take it again after he hath left it, and run to his hold, and play with it more than he did at firſt, and after all leave it. A Fiſh that takes it moſt greedily at firſt, and carries it furtheſt, does notwithſtanding often forſake it; the only way to come quit with ſuch is to uſe the Snap.

When you have bit, and the Fiſh goes down the Stream with it; 'tis commonly a ſmall one, but on the contrary if he ſails ſlowly upwards with the Bait, it's a ſign of a good one. For greater Fiſh bite more calmly and moderately than the leſſer; for the ſmall ones ſnatch and run away with it without

out any care or deliberation, but old Fiſh are more wary and cunning; they are ſooner taken by a Line laid for them all Night than by Trowling. When the Water is clear and not very deep, you may ſee him riſe at it and take it, ſo you may ſee the Bait gliſter as it lies croſs his Mouth; you may then ſee when he hath pouched, and know your time to ſtrike.

When you have firſt ſtricken him, you muſt be ſure to have your Line ready and ſlack, that he may take as much liberty as he will; for when he finds himſelf trapan'd with the Hook, he'll uſe all his might and cunning to get looſe; as you feel him come eaſily towards you, you may be ſtill drawing, till you feel him make reſiſtance again, then you may let him have his ſwing till his fury is over, then gather your Line to you again till he ſtarts away, and if you can get him to the top, it will the ſooner tire him: For the more he ſtrives and throws himſelf from you, the ſooner he'll be weary; after this manner by drawing him up and letting him looſe again, you may tire him and tame him till you bring him to your Hand; then go not unadviſedly to take him out by the Back, or Tail, but take him by the Head, and put your Fingers into his Eyes (which is the faſteſt hold) but not into his Guills, leſt your Fingers be injured with his Bites,

which are venemous; but if you have a Landing-hook, then you may eaſily and ſecurely uſe that.

Ipſe mihi plaudo; nam Stulta
è fæce popelli,
Hic ſcripſiſſe feret me bene,
& ille malè.

F I N I S.

This

This Paragraph ſhould have been added after *Chap.* 1. *Sect.* 10. Viz.

To make excellent Glews for Angling Rods in ſome caſes, as alſo for all manner of Joyners Work.

§ 11. Take ſcummed Milk, which has ſtood ſo long that no more Cream will ariſe from it, ſcum it very clean, and ſet it over the Fire in a Leaden Pot, letting it boil a little, and if any Cream ariſe, take it off: Then put into it a ſufficient quantity of Glew, cut it into ſmall bits, which will ſoon melt; boil it into a body that it may neither be too thick, nor too thin, (for in this boiling lyes much Art) then take it from the Fire, and uſe it as other Glew.

Obſerve, That Firſt, This Glew binds beyond belief, and will not be ſubject to reſolve with any ordinary moiſture of the Weather, becauſe the curdy part of the Milk, freed from its Oil, is joyned with the Glew. Secondly, That you take care it burn not to the ſides of the Pot, for then it will be deprived of its Strength, to prevent which (both in its firſt making, and after melting of it) you had beſt

both make and melt it in *Balneo Mariæ*, ſo will you prevent burning, and by that means you may more ſafely boil it to what Body you pleaſe, without danger of hurting the Glew. For in making any Glew it ſhould boil as leiſurely as poſſible. This hath been often experimented to be an excellent Glew.

Monſieur *Lemery* tells us, that if you mix Quick-lime and Linſeed-oil together, and what you Glew with it, dry in the ſhade, that it will become as hard as Iron, and not reſolve either by the heat of Fire, or moiſture of Water. And a Country Joyner, once told me, That if one pour ſome Water on ſome Stones of Quick-lime, until they are well quenched, and the Ebullition ceaſeth, and then decant the Water, and therewith boil very leiſurely your Glew, that 'twill make an exceeding ſtrong Glew.

Linſeed-oil is good to anoint Hazle Angle Rods, once in 2 or 3 years with.

THE

THE TABLE.

NOTE, That *c.* signifies *Chapter*, and *ſ. Section.*

ANgling at float c. 28.
At Dub-fly c. 34, 35.
At Running-line both in clear and muddy Waters c. 27.
At top with a Worm c. 29.
In the Night c. 30.
Rules for Grouna and mid Water Angling c. 31.
With a Ledger Bait c. 32.
With a Natural-fly c. 33.
With a Minnow for Trout c. 36.
For Pike with a Minnow c. 37. c. 41.
With Trowl for Pike ibid.
With Snap for Pike ibid.

With Snare for Pike c. 37. 41.
For an Eel by Bobbing, Brogling, or Snigling c. 22. ſ. 5, 6.
For an Eel with Night-hooks c. 30.
For an Eel at Ledger Bait c. 32.

A.

Aſh-grub c. 4. ſ. 14.
Ant-fly c. 4. ſ. 19.
Aſh-fly c. 4. ſ. 31.

B.

Bacon c. 4. ſ. 37.
Bleak c. 25.
Black-berries c. 4. ſ. 28.
Blood c. 4. ſ. 17. c. 7. ſ. 9.
Bags c. 3. ſ. 16.
Baits c. 4. c. 7. ſ. 11. c. 3. ſ. 16.
Bobs c. 4. ſ. 9, 10.
Bark-worm c 4. ſ. 14.
Bull-head c. 4. ſ. 22. c. 26.
Barbel c. 19.
Bream c. 18.
Brandling c. 4. ſ. 3.
Bobbing for Eels c. 22. ſ. 6.

Brogling

Brogling for Eels c. 22. ſ. 5.
Beetle c. 4. ſ. 25.
Black-bee c. 4. ſ. 39.

C.

Cod-bait
Cadiſh-worm } c. 4. ſ. 11, 12, 13. c. 3. ſ. 16.
Caſe-worm
Creeper c. 4. ſ. 26.
Canker-worm c. 4. ſ. 8.
Cricket c. 4. ſ. 25.
Cheeſe c. 4. ſ. 29.
Carp c. 16. *to dreſs* c. 39.
Chub and Chevin c. 21. c. 33.
Clap-bait c. 4. ſ. 10.
Conger c. 22. ſ. 1.
Cherries c. 4. ſ. 28.

D.

Dock-worm c. 4. ſ. 15.
Directions general c. 7.
Dace and Dare c. 20.
Dew-worm c. 4. ſ. 2. c. 27. ſ. 3.
Dub-fly c 34. c. 35.
Dibbing c. 33.

Depth

Depth of Water to try c. 3. ſ. 13.
Dreſſing of Fiſh c. 39.

E.

Eyes of Fiſh c. 4. ſ. 34.
Eels c. 22.
Ear-wigg c. 4. ſ. 38.

F.

Fiſh-ponds c. 38.
Fern-fly, or Fern-bud c. 4. ſ. 40.
Float-Angling c. 28.
Flag-worm c. 4. ſ. 15.
Floats c. 3. ſ. 5, 6, 7, 8, 9.
Fly-Natural to Angle with c. 33.
Fly-Artificial c. 34. c. 35.
Fiſhes general Haunt c. 7. ſ. 7.
Flook and Flounder c. 24.
Frogs c. 4. ſ. 35.
Feeding Fiſh c. 7. ſ. 8. c. 38. ſ. 5.
Fiſh how to dreſs c. 39.
Fly to make c. 34.

G.

Gentles c. 4. ſ. 16.
Grain c. 4. ſ. 18.
Graſhopper c. 4. ſ. 25.

Green-

Green-drake c. 4. ſ. 32. c. 35.
Garden-worm c. 4. ſ. 2.
Grayling c. 12.
Gudgeon c. 15.
Gilt-tail c. 4. ſ. 3.

H.

Hair c. 2.
Hooks c. 3. ſ. 1,2,3,4. c. 41. ſ. 9.
Hornets and Humble-bees c. 4. ſ. 20.
Hawthorn-fly c. 4. ſ. 33.
Haunt general of Fiſh c. 7. ſ. 7.

L.

Lamprey c. 4. ſ. 23. c. 22. ſ. 1.
Lines c. 2.
Leading Lines c. 3. ſ. 10, 11, 12. c. 27. c. 28. c. 31.
Line Caſes c. 3. ſ. 15.
Loach c. 4. ſ. 22. c. 26.
Lip-berries c. 4. ſ. 27.
Ledger-bait c. 32. c. 41, ſ. 8.
Lob-worm c. 4. ſ. 2.

M.

Maggots c. 4. f. 16.
Minnow c. 4. f. 22. c. 26. c. 36.
Marſh, or Meadow-worm c. 4. f. 4.
Mulberries c. 4. f. 28.
Moth c. 4. f. 36.
Millers Thumbs c. 26.

N.

Net c. 3. f. 17.
Night Angling c. 30.

O.

Oak-worm c. 4. f. 8.
Oak-fly c. 4. f. 31.
Ointments c. 6.
Oat-cake c. 4. f. 29.

P.

Paſtes c. 5.
Plummet c. 3. f. 13.
Pannier c. 3. f. 18.

Palmer-

Palmer-fly, or Worm c. 4. ſ. 8.
Pride c. 4. ſ. 23.
Pike c. 4. ſ. 30. c. 23. c. 37. c. 39. c. 41.
Pearch c. 13.
Pope c. 14.
Periwinckle c. 4. ſ. 42.
Penck c. 26.

R.

Rods for Angling c. 1.
Raſ-berries c. 4. ſ. 28.
Receipts c. 6.
Ruff c. 14.
Roch c. 20.
Running-line and Worm c. 27.
Red-worm c. 4. ſ. 3.

S.

Sheep's Blood c. 4. ſ. 17. c. 7. ſ. 9.
Salmon c. 11.
Salmon Spawn c. 4. ſ. 21.
Snails c. 4. ſ. 24.
Stone-fly c. 4. ſ. 32. c. 35.
Seaſons proper for Angling, or not c. 8. c. 9.
Swivel c. 36.

Snigling

Snigling for Eels c. 22.
Shrimps c. 4. f. 43.
Snare c. 37.
Seven-eyes c. 4. f. 23.

T.

Trowling c. 37. c. 41. f. 13.
Trouts c. 10.
Tag-tail c. 4. f. 5.
Tench c. 17.
Twatchel c. 4. f. 2.

U.

Umber c. 12.

W.

Whetſtone c. 3. f. 14.
Worms c. 4. f. 1,2,3,4,5,6,7.
Worms to bait c. 7. f. 11. c. 27.
Wooll-bed c. 4. f. 8.
White grub, or White bait c. 4. f. 9,10.
Waſps c. 4. f. 20.
Water-cricket and Water-louſe c. 4. f. 26.
Woodcock-fly c. 4. f. 31.
Withy Bark c. 3. f. 16.

Names

Names of the Fiſh *this Book treats of.*

1. Barbel	*c.*19.	12. Gudgeon	*c.*15.
2. Bleak	*c.*25.	13. Lamprey	*c.*22.
3. Bream	*c.*18.	14. Loach	*c.*26.
4. Bull-head	*c.*26.	15. Minnow	*ib.*
5. Chub, or Chevin	*c.*21.	16. Millers Thumb	*ib.*
6. Carp	*c.*16.	17. Pike	*c.*23.
7. Conger	*c.*22.	18. Pearch	*c.*13.
8. Dace and Dare	*c.*20.	19. Pope, or Ruff	*c.*14.
9. Eels	*c.*22.	20. Roch	*c.*20.
10. Flook, or Flounder	*c.*24.	21. Salmon	*c.*11.
11. Grayling	*c.*12.	22. Trouts	*c.*10.
		23. Tench	*c.*17.
		24. Umber, *vid.* Grayling.	

Note, *That there are but* 19 *freſh Water Fiſh herein treated of, the other* 3, viz. Flounder, Conger *and* Lamprey *belong to the Sea, though often taken in the Mouths of freſh Rivers. There is omitted a very ſmall Fiſh called a* Stickleback, *without any Scales, whoſe Body is fenced with ſeveral Prickles; but he's of ſo little value as is not worth mentioning, only he makes up the Number of our freſh Water Fiſh juſt* 20.

Adver-

Advertiſement.

AT the Sign of the *Fiſh* in *Black Horſe Alley*, near *Fleet-Bridge*, liveth *Will. Brown*, who Maketh all Sorts of *Fiſhing-Rods*, and Selleth all manner of *Fiſhing Tackle*; alſo *Charles Kirby*'s Hooks, with Worms, Gentles, and Flies; and alſo the *Eaſt-Indian* Weed.

ERRATA.

PAge 13. line 12. for or read of. p. 33. l. 30. for ſweat r. ſweet. p. 43. l. 3. for ſlightly r. ſightly. p. 56. l. 9. for plate r. Bait. p. 70. l. 28. and 29. blot out (or for want thereof, with Oyl of Spike) and inſert theſe Words; *viz.* and Chymical Oyl of Cammomil of each an equal quantity. p. 82. l. 30. ſo Back r. Bank. p. 86. l. 29. for *Guinmad* r. *Guinnad*. p. 122. l. 19. after name add, *viz. Aſpredo*. p. 132. l. 8. after Breams, add neither large nor good. p. 191. l. 1. after Silver-Wire, add Gold-Wire. p. 204. l. 14. for of all r. over all. p. 241. l. 27. for Gloomy r. Gleamy. p. 273. l. 19. for Broil'd r. Boil'd. p. 299. l. 22. for found r. bound.